MY20 BK Astra
Owner's Manual

General Motors Holden Australia NSC Pty Ltd, ABN 60 603 486 933,
Holden New Zealand Ltd., Company Number 1602 (hereinafter Holden)

Change of name, address or ownership

If you drive a pre-owned Holden, have moved house or changed any of your details, we'd like to hear from you!

Holden uses your details to keep your vehicle's factory provided Roadside Assistance and Warranty details up to date.

It also helps us let you know if there is an existing rework action required on your vehicle. To update your details, please take a few minutes to fill in and mail the form at the back of the Service & Warranty Booklet or visit Holden's website at: www.holden.com.au/forms/change-of-owner-details

Holden is collecting the new owner's personal information in order to process the request for transfer for the specified vehicle. We may disclose your personal information to our related companies and third parties who provide us with (or help us provide) products and services, including to overseas locations such as the USA, and other countries in Europe, Oceania and Asia.
Holden's privacy policy (available at: www.holden.com.au/privacypolicy) states how you can seek to access or correct any personal information Holden holds about you, how to complain about a privacy breach by Holden and how Holden will deal with a privacy complaint.
You can contact Holden on 1800 033 349 or alternatively, you may prefer to email Holden at: holdencustomercare@gm.com

Note: Please refer to the inside front cover of the Service & Warranty Booklet for the Vehicle Identification Certificate.

Printed in Australia
Part No. 92511115
October 2019
(MY20 BK Astra. Print 1-O)

© 2019 General Motors Holden Australia NSC Pty Ltd.
© 2019 Holden New Zealand Ltd.
Reproduction in whole or part is prohibited without written approval from
General Motors Holden Australia NSC Pty Ltd, ABN 60 603 486 933 (Australia) or
Holden New Zealand Ltd., Company Number 1602 (New Zealand)

Contents

Introduction 2
Keys, Doors, and Windows 7
Seats and Restraints 29
Storage 50
Instruments and Controls 57
Lighting 90
Infotainment System 98
Climate Controls 150
Driving and Operating 161
Vehicle Care 225
Service and Maintenance 274
Technical Data 276
Customer Information 283
Index 288

Introduction

We thank you for choosing Holden and want to assure you of our continuing interest in your driving pleasure and satisfaction.

This owner's manual applies to the current BK Astra vehicle. Therefore, due to different models and options, you may find reference in this manual to some equipment not fitted to your own vehicle.

Please note that all information, illustrations and specifications in this manual are based on the latest production information available at the time of printing.

Holden reserves the right to make changes at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

This Owner's Manual provides you with all the necessary information to enable you to drive your vehicle safely and efficiently.

Make sure your passengers are aware of the possible risk of accident and injury which may result from improper use of the vehicle.

Using this Manual

- This manual describes all options and features available for this model. **Certain descriptions, including those for display and menu functions, may not apply to your vehicle due to model variant.**
- The In Brief section will give you an initial overview.
- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual and within each chapter shows where the information is located.
- The index will enable you to search for specific information.
- Directional data, e.g. left or right, or front or back, always relate to the direction of travel.
- For a complete list of the registered trademarks contained in this manual *Trademarks and Licence Agreements* ⇨ *283*

Danger, Warning, and Caution

⚠ Danger

Text marked ⚠ **Danger** provides information on risk of fatal injury. Disregarding this information may endanger life.

⚠ Warning

Text marked ⚠ **Warning** provides information on risk of accident or injury. Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

Caution

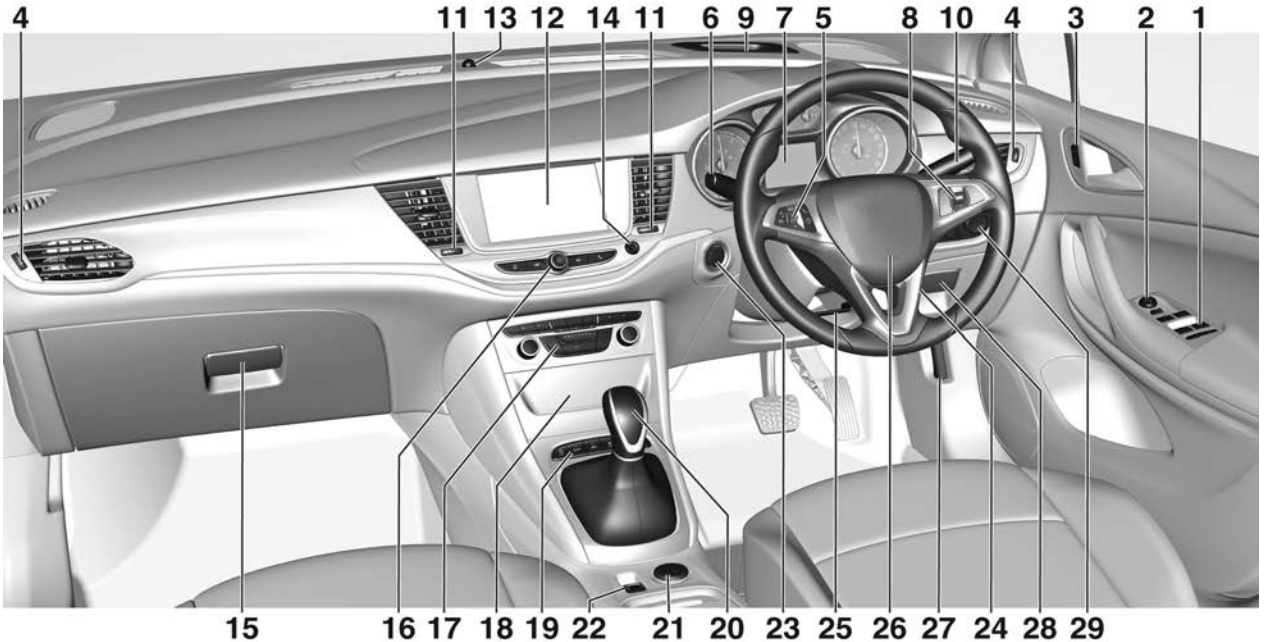
Text marked **Caution** provides information on possible damage to the vehicle. Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage.

Symbols

Page references are indicated with ⇨.

This indicates 'see page'.

Instrument Panel Overview



1. *Power Windows* ⇨ *24*.
2. *Power Mirrors* ⇨ *22*.
3. *Door Locks* ⇨ *14*.
4. Side air vents. See *Adjustable Air Vents* ⇨ *158*.
5. *Cruise Control* ⇨ *194*.

   Speed Limiter ⇨ *196*.

   Adaptive Cruise Control ⇨ *198*.

   Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System ⇨ *205*.
6. *Windscreen Wiper/Washer* ⇨ *60*.
7. *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *66*.

   Driver Information Centre (DIC) ⇨ *80*.
8. *Steering Wheel Controls* ⇨ *58*.
9. Forward collision alert indicator. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *205*.
10. Indicator lever. See *Turn and Lane-Change Signals* ⇨ *93*.

    Low/high beam. See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *90*.

    Buttons for the driver information centre. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *80*.
11. Centre air vents. See *Adjustable Air Vents* ⇨ *158*.
12. Infotainment display. See *Overview* ⇨ *98*.
13. Light sensor. See *Automatic Headlamp System* ⇨ *91*.

    Theft deterrent system status LED. See *Anti-theft Alarm System* ⇨ *20*.
14. *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ *92*.
15. Glovebox. See *Storage Compartments* ⇨ *50*.
16. Infotainment controls. See *Overview* ⇨ *98*.
17. *Air Conditioning System* ⇨ *150* or *Electronic Climate Control System* ⇨ *152*.
18. Storage bin / phone holder. See *Front Storage* ⇨ *51*.

    Fuse box (behind). See *Fuses* ⇨ *246*.
19. *Traction Control System (TCS)* ⇨ *180*.

    Electronic Stability Control (ESC) ⇨ *181*.

    Sport Mode ⇨ *182*.

    Parking Assist ⇨ *186*.

    Advanced Parking Assist ⇨ *190*.

    Lane Keep Assist (LKA) ⇨ *216*.

    Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature ⇨ *168*.
20. Shift lever. See *Automatic Transmission* ⇨ *172*.
21. 12V power outlet. See *Power Outlets* ⇨ *63*.
22. Handbrake. See *Parking Brake* ⇨ *177*.

    Electric Parking Brake ⇨ *177*.
23. Engine Start/Stop button. See *Ignition Positions* ⇨ *163*.
24. Ignition switch. See *Ignition Positions* ⇨ *163*.
25. *Steering Wheel Adjustment* ⇨ *58*.

26. *Horn* ⇨ *59*.
27. Bonnet release. See *Bonnet* ⇨ *228*.
28. *Storage Compartments* ⇨ *50*.
29. *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *90*.

    Rear Fog Lights ⇨ *93*.

    Headlamp Leveling Control ⇨ *92*.

    Instrument Panel Illumination Control ⇨ *94*.

Keys, Doors, and Windows

Keys and Locks
Keys 7
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 8
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation 9
Remote Vehicle Start 13
Door Locks 14
Safety Locks 18

Doors
Tailgate 19

Vehicle Security
Anti-theft Alarm System 20
Immobiliser 21

Exterior Mirrors
Convex Mirrors 22
Power Mirrors 22
Folding Mirrors 22
Heated Mirrors 23

Interior Mirrors
Manual Rear View Mirror 23
Automatic Dimming Rear View Mirror 24

Windows
Windows 24
Power Windows 24
Heated Rear Window 26
Sun Visors 26

Roof
Sunroof 27

Keys and Locks

Keys

Caution
Do not attach heavy or bulky items to the ignition key.

Handle the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter with care, protect from moisture and high temperatures and avoid unnecessary operation.

Note

Do not put the RKE transmitter in the load compartment.

Type 1

Type 2

Two RKE transmitters are supplied with the vehicle. Depending on vehicle model, different functions may be available.

See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System* ⇨ *8*, *Door Locks* ⇨ *14*, *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *13*, *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *166*.

Replacement Transmitters

The key number is specified on a detachable tag. The key number must be quoted when ordering a replacement transmitter as it is a component of the immobiliser system.

Foldaway Key Blade

Press the button to extend the key blade. To fold the key blade, first press the button.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System has a range of up to 100 metres, but may also be much less due to external influences. The hazard warning flashers confirm operation. Handle with care, protect

from moisture and high temperatures and avoid unnecessary operation.

Do not make changes or modifications to the RKE system.

Window tinting may reduce the operating range of the RKE transmitter.

If there is a decrease in the operating range:

- Check the distance. The transmitter may be too far from the vehicle.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.
- Check the transmitter's battery.
- If the transmitter is still not working correctly, see your dealer for service.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation

Lock: Press to lock all doors, the tailgate and fuel filler door.

If the driver's door is not closed, the central locking system will not operate. A horn chirp will sound to alert you.

Unlock: Two unlocking modes are available:

- All doors, the tailgate and fuel filler door will be unlocked by pressing once.
- Only the driver's door and fuel filler door will be unlocked by pressing once. To unlock all remaining doors and the tailgate, press once more.

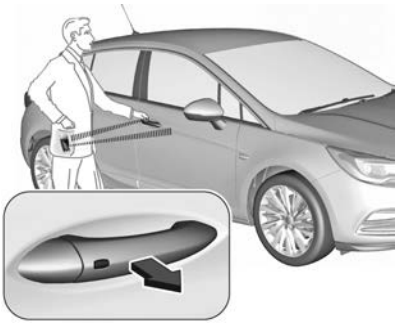
This setting can be changed in the Settings menu in the infotainment system, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *87*.

Remote vehicle start:
If equipped, press to start the engine from outside the vehicle. See *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *13*.

Confirmation

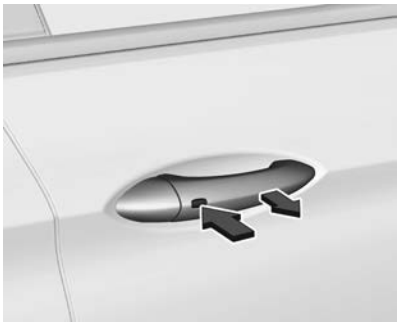
Operation of the central locking system is confirmed by the hazard warning lights flashing. This setting must first be activated in the Settings menu in the infotainment system. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *87*.

Keyless Entry Operation



The RKE transmitter must be outside the vehicle and within a radius of approx. one metre from the door in question or the tailgate.

Unlocking



Press the button on the exterior door handle and pull the handle.

Two unlocking modes are available:

- All doors, the tailgate and fuel filler door will be unlocked by pressing the button on the exterior handle once.
- Only the driver's door and fuel filler door are unlocked by pressing the button on the driver's door exterior handle once. To unlock all remaining doors and the tailgate, press the button once more.

This setting can be changed in the Settings menu in the infotainment system, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *87*.

Locking

Press the button on any exterior door handle. All doors, the tailgate and fuel filler door will be locked.

The system locks if any of the following occurs:

- It has been more than five seconds since unlocking.

- The button on an exterior handle has been pressed twice within five seconds to unlock the vehicle.
- Any door has been opened and all doors are now closed.

If the driver's door is not closed properly, the RKE transmitter remains in the vehicle or the ignition is not off, locking will not be permitted.

If there have been two or more RKE transmitters in the vehicle and the ignition was on once, the doors will be locked even if just one transmitter is taken out of the vehicle.

Unlocking and Opening the Tailgate

The tailgate can be unlocked and opened by pushing the touch-pad switch under the brand emblem when the RKE transmitter is in range. See *Tailgate ⇨ 19*.

Battery Replacement

Replace the battery as soon as the system no longer operates properly or the range is reduced. The need for battery replacement is indicated by a message in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

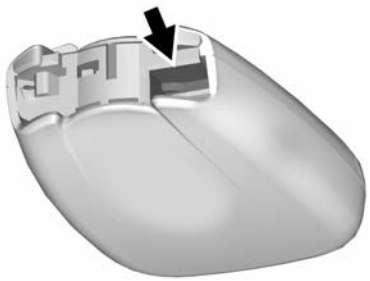
Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

Type 1

1. Insert flat screwdriver into the slot on the back of the RKE transmitter and separate the back cover.
2. Remove the battery.
3. Install a new battery. Use a CR2032 or equivalent battery. Pay attention to the installation position.
4. Insert the back cover in the area of the key blade, fold down and close.

Type 2

1. Press the button on the side of the RKE transmitter and remove the mechanical key from the housing.



2. Insert the key blade again approx. 6 mm and turn the key to open the housing. Take care, as inserting the key blade further than this can damage the housing.

3. Remove and replace the battery. Use a CR2032 or equivalent battery. Pay attention to the installation position.
4. Close the housing and insert the key blade.

Fault

If the central locking cannot be operated or the engine cannot be started, the cause may be one of the following:

- Fault in RKE transmitter.
- RKE transmitter is out of reception range.

- The battery voltage is too low.
- Overload of the central locking system by operating at frequent intervals. The power supply is interrupted for a short time.
- Interference from higher-power radio waves from other sources.

To rectify the cause of the fault, change the position of the RKE transmitter or use the mechanical key to unlock the doors, see *Door Locks* ⇨ *14*.

Memorised Settings

Whenever the ignition is switched off, the following settings are automatically memorised by the RKE transmitter:

- Automatic climate control.
- Lighting.
- Infotainment system.
- Door locking system.
- Sport mode settings.
- Comfort settings.

This is set for each RKE transmitter. The saved settings are automatically used the next time the ignition is turned on with the applicable memorised transmitter.

A precondition is that Personalisation by Driver is activated in the Settings menu in the infotainment system.

The status change is available only after locking and unlocking the vehicle.

See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *87*.

Remote Vehicle Start

If equipped, remote vehicle start allows the engine to be started from outside the vehicle.

The remote vehicle start button is on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.

The climate control system will use the previous settings during a remote start.

Starting the Vehicle

To start the engine using the remote vehicle start feature:

1. Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle.
2. Press and release .
3. Immediately after completing step 2, press and hold for at least four seconds or until the hazard warning lights flash.

   The hazard warning lights flashing confirms the request to start the vehicle remotely has been received.

   The engine starts, the doors will remain locked and the climate control system may come on.

   The engine will continue to run for 10 minutes. The remote vehicle start can be extended, see “Extending Engine Run Time” below.
4. To enter the vehicle, unlock the doors.

5. If the engine is running when you enter the vehicle: Press the brake pedal and press the Engine Start/Stop button before moving the shift lever out of **P**.

   If the engine is not running when you enter the vehicle: Start the engine normally. See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *166*.

Extending Engine Run Time

To extend the remote vehicle start run-time to 20 minutes, repeat steps 1-3 while the engine is still running. The remote start can be extended once.

For example, if the engine has been running for five minutes and the remote vehicle start is extended, the engine will run for a total of 20 minutes (10 plus 10).

A maximum of two remote vehicle starts, or a single start with an extension, is allowed between ignition cycles.

The ignition must be turned on and then back off before the remote vehicle start procedure can be used again.

Cancelling a Remote Start

To cancel a remote vehicle start, do one of the following:

- Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle and press and hold ☊.
- Turn on the hazard warning lights.
- Turn the ignition on and then off.

Conditions in Which Remote Start Will Not Operate

The remote vehicle start feature will not operate if:

- The RKE transmitter is in the vehicle.
- The vehicle is unlocked.
- The bonnet is not closed.
- The hazard warning lights are on.
- The Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) in the instrument cluster is on.
- The engine coolant temperature is too high.
- The oil pressure is low.
- Two remote vehicle starts, or a single remote start with an extension, have already been used.
- The shift lever is not in **P**.

Door Locks

⚠ Danger

Unlocked doors can be dangerous.

- Passengers, especially children, can easily open the doors and fall out of a moving vehicle. When a door is locked, the handle will not open it. The chance of being thrown out of the vehicle in a crash is increased if the doors are not locked. So, all passengers should wear seat belts properly and the doors should be locked whenever the vehicle is driven.

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

- Young children who get into unlocked vehicles may be unable to get out. A child can be overcome by extreme heat and can suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Always lock the vehicle whenever leaving it.
- Outsiders can easily enter through an unlocked door when you slow down or stop the vehicle. Locking the doors can help prevent this from happening.

There are several ways to lock and unlock the doors, tailgate and fuel filler door.

From the outside:

- Press or on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.
- Press the lock/unlock button on an outside door handle when the RKE transmitter is within one metre of the door (vehicles with keyless entry).
- Using the mechanical key in the driver's door lock.
- Press the touch pad under the brand emblem when the RKE transmitter is within one metre of the tailgate (vehicles with keyless entry). If the doors are locked, this will only unlock and open the tailgate.

See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System* ⇨ *8*, *Tailgate* ⇨ *19* or "Operation with the Mechanical Key" below.

From the inside:

- Operate the central locking buttons:
  - Press to lock the doors, tailgate and fuel filler door.
  - Press to unlock the doors, tailgate and fuel filler door.
- Pull the interior handle twice.

Operation with the Mechanical Key

In case of a fault, such as the vehicle battery or RKE transmitter battery being flat, the driver's door can be locked or unlocked with the mechanical key.

Type 1

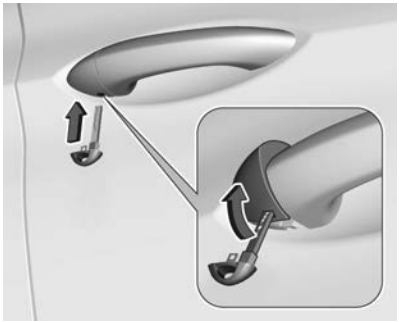
Press the button on the RKE transmitter to unfold the key blade.

Type 2

Push the button on the side of the RKE transmitter and remove the mechanical key.

Manual Unlocking

The lock cylinder in the driver's door is covered by a cap.



Insert the mechanical key blade into the recess at the bottom of the cap and swivel the key upward.

Manually unlock the driver's door by inserting the mechanical key into the lock cylinder and turning anti-clockwise.

If there is vehicle power, all other doors, the tailgate and the fuel filler door can be unlocked by pressing in the driver's door central locking buttons.

Alternatively, the other doors can be opened individually by pulling the interior handle twice. If there is no vehicle power, the tailgate and fuel filler door cannot be unlocked.

Manual Locking

Close the tailgate, fuel filler door and all doors except the driver's door, and press in the driver's door central locking buttons. Then close the driver's door and lock it from the outside by turning the key in the lock cylinder clockwise.

If there is no vehicle power, push the inside locking knob of each door except the driver's door. Then close the driver's door and lock it from the outside by turning the key in the lock cylinder clockwise.

Important: If there is no vehicle power, the fuel filler door cannot be locked if it was unlocked.

After locking, replace the lock cylinder cap: Insert the cap with the lower side in the recesses, swivel and push the cap until it engages at the upper side.

Automatic Locking

Auto Door Lock

This security feature can be configured to automatically lock all doors, the tailgate and fuel filler door after shifting out of Park.

When at a standstill after driving, the vehicle will be unlocked automatically as soon as the key is

removed from the ignition switch, or with keyless entry, when the ignition is switched off.

Activation or deactivation of Auto Door Lock can be changed in the Settings menu in the infotainment system, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *87*.

Relock Doors Unlocked Remotely

This feature can be configured to automatically lock all doors, the tailgate and fuel filler door a short time after unlocking with the RKE transmitter, provided no door has been opened.

Activation or deactivation can be changed in the Settings menu in the infotainment system, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *87*.

Passive Door Lock

On vehicles with keyless entry, this feature locks the vehicle automatically after several seconds if a RKE transmitter has been recognised previously inside the vehicle, all doors have then been closed and the RKE transmitter does not remain within the vehicle. It can be set to alert you also.

If the RKE transmitter is in the vehicle or if the ignition is not off, passive locking will not be permitted.

If there have been two or more RKE transmitters in the vehicle and the ignition was on once, the feature locks the vehicle if just one RKE transmitter is taken out of the vehicle.

To prevent passive locking of the vehicle, e.g. when refuelling or if passengers remain in the vehicle, the system should be disabled.

Activation or deactivation of Passive Door Lock can be changed in the Settings menu in the infotainment system, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *87*.

Safety Locks

Child Safety Locks

Child safety locks help prevent the rear doors being accidentally opened by small children in the vehicle.

Open the rear door and move the pin to the front position. The door cannot be opened from inside.

To deactivate, move the pin to the rear position.

⚠ Warning

For safety, always check the lock is operating correctly (after setting) by trying to open the door from inside the vehicle.

Doors

Tailgate

Opening

⚠ Warning

To prevent dangerous exhaust fumes entering the vehicle, close the tailgate when the engine is running. If it is necessary to leave the tailgate open (while carrying bulky cargo) close all windows, switch heater controls to 'fresh' and set fan to highest speed.

Push the touch pad under the brand emblem and open the tailgate:

- After unlocking the doors, or
- With the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter within approx. one metre of the tailgate (vehicles with keyless entry). See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *9*.

Closing

Use the interior handle to close the tailgate until it drops under its own weight.

⚠ Warning

To avoid injury and/or damage to the vehicle, before closing the tailgate check the contact area is unobstructed.

Vehicle Security

Anti-theft Alarm System

The anti-theft alarm system is combined with the central door locking system. It monitors the doors, tailgate, bonnet and ignition.

Activation

All doors must be closed and for vehicles with keyless entry, the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter must not remain in the vehicle. Otherwise the system cannot be activated.

- RKE transmitter:
  - Self-activated 30 seconds after locking the vehicle by pressing once.
  - Directly by pressing twice within five seconds.
- Keyless entry: Self-activated 30 seconds after locking the vehicle by pressing the button on a respective exterior door handle.
- Keyless entry with passive locking enabled: Briefly activated after passive locking occurs.

Status LED

A status LED is integrated in the sensor on top of the instrument panel.

Status during the first 30 seconds of anti-theft alarm system activation:

- LED illuminates: Test, arming delay.
- LED flashes quickly: Doors, tailgate or bonnet not completely closed, or system fault.

Status after system is armed:

- LED flashes slowly: System is armed.

Seek the assistance of a Holden dealer in the event of faults.

Deactivation

- RKE transmitter: Unlocking the vehicle by pressing deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.

- Keyless entry: Unlocking the vehicle by pressing the button on a respective exterior door handle deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.

  The RKE transmitter must be outside the vehicle, within a range of approx. one metre of the relevant door side.

  The system is not deactivated by unlocking the driver's door with the mechanical key or with the central locking button in the passenger compartment.

Alarm

When triggered, the alarm horn sounds and the hazard warning lights flash simultaneously.

The anti-theft alarm system can be deactivated by pressing , by pressing the switch on the door handle (with keyless entry) or switching on the ignition.

A triggered alarm, which has not been interrupted by the driver, will be indicated by the hazard warning lights. They will flash quickly three times the next time the vehicle is unlocked with the RKE transmitter.

Additionally a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre after switching on the ignition.

If the vehicle's battery is to be disconnected (e.g. for maintenance work), the alarm siren must be deactivated: switch the ignition on then off, then disconnect the vehicle's battery within 15 seconds.

Immobiliser

The immobiliser is activated automatically once the ignition is turned off.

If the instrument cluster control indicator flashes when the ignition is on, there is a fault in the system and the engine cannot be started.

Switch off the ignition and repeat the start attempt. If required, retry with the RKE transmitter placed in

the centre console transmitter pocket. See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *166*.

If the control indicator continues flashing, attempt to start the engine using another RKE transmitter.

Seek the assistance of your dealer.

Note

- Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) tags such as security passes, etc. may cause interference with the RKE transmitter. Do not have them placed near the transmitter when starting the vehicle.
- The immobiliser does not lock the doors. You should always lock the vehicle after leaving it.

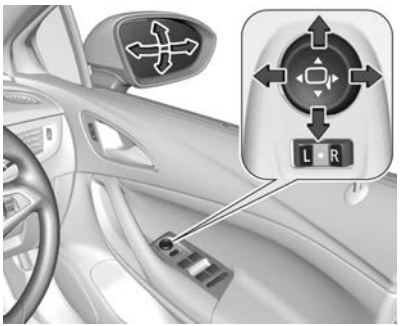
Exterior Mirrors

Convex Mirrors

The shape of the mirror makes objects appear smaller, which will affect the ability to estimate distances.

Symbols for the side blind zone alert are displayed in the mirrors. See *Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)* ⇨ *214*.

Power Mirrors



Select the relevant exterior mirror by pushing the switch to (**L**) for the left mirror or (**R**) for the right mirror.

Press the control to adjust the selected mirror in the desired direction.

In position ● no mirror is selected.

Folding Mirrors

For safety, the exterior mirrors will swing out of their normal mounting position if they are struck with sufficient force.

Reposition the mirror by applying slight pressure to the mirror housing.

Electric Folding

Select position ● and then push the control ▽. Both exterior mirrors will fold.

Push ▽ again to return both exterior mirrors to their original position.

If an electrically folded mirror is manually folded, pushing ▽ will only electrically fold the other mirror.

Heated Mirrors

Operated together with heated rear window by pressing REAR. An LED in the button illuminates.

Heating will operate with the engine running and is switched off automatically after a short time.

Interior Mirrors

Manual Rear View Mirror

To reduce glare from following vehicles at night, adjust the lever on the underside of the mirror housing.

Note

The rear view clarity is reduced when the mirror is set to the anti-glare position.

Return the mirror back to its original position as soon as there is no longer any glare.

Automatic Dimming Rear View Mirror

The vehicle may have an automatic dimming rear view mirror. Glare from following vehicles at night is automatically reduced.

Windows

For vehicles with an automatic dimming interior mirror, do not attach stickers or similar to the windscreen in the area of the interior mirror. Otherwise the detection zone of the sensor and the view area of the camera in the mirror housing could be restricted.

Windscreen Replacement

Caution

If the vehicle has a front-looking camera sensor for the driver assistance systems, it is very important that any windscreen replacement is performed accurately. Otherwise, these systems may not operate correctly and there is a risk of unexpected behaviour/or messages from these systems.

Power Windows

⚠ Warning

Take care when operating the power windows. Risk of injury, particularly to children.

If there are children on the rear seat, switch on the child safety system for the power windows.

Keep a close watch on the windows when closing them. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

The power windows can be operated when the ignition is on, or in retained accessory power mode. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *167*.

Operate the switch for the respective window by pushing to open or pulling to close.

Driver's Door

Pushing or pulling gently to the first detent: The window moves up or down as long as the switch is operated.

Pushing or pulling firmly to the second detent then releasing: The window moves up or down automatically with the safety function enabled.

To stop movement, operate the switch once more in the same direction.

Except Driver's Door

Pushing gently to the first detent or pulling: The window moves up or down as long as the switch is operated.

Pushing firmly to the second detent then releasing: The window moves down automatically.

To stop movement, operate the switch once more in the same direction.

Safety Function

If the window glass encounters resistance during automatic closing above approx. half way, it is immediately stopped and opened again.

Override

In the event of closing difficulties due to frost or the like, turn the ignition on, then pull the switch to the first detent and hold. The window moves up without the safety function enabled while the switch is being operated.

To stop movement, release the switch.

Child Safety System for Rear Windows

Press to deactivate the rear door power windows; the LED illuminates. To activate, press again.

Overload

If the windows are repeatedly operated within short intervals, window operation may be disabled for some time.

Initialising the Power Windows

If the windows cannot be closed automatically, such as after disconnecting the vehicle battery, a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Activate the window electronics as follows:

1. Close the doors.
2. Turn the ignition on.
3. Push the switch until the window is completely open and keep pushing for additional two seconds.
4. Pull a power window switch until the window is closed and keep pulling for additional two seconds.
5. Repeat for each window.

Heated Rear Window

Operated together with heated exterior mirrors by pressing REAR. An LED in the button illuminates.

Heating will operate with the engine running and is switched off automatically after a short time.

Sun Visors

The sun visors can be folded down or swivelled to the side to prevent glare.

If equipped, to view the vanity mirror, lift the cover from the lower edge. Lamps illuminate when the cover is opened. The mirror covers should be closed when driving.

Roof

Sunroof

⚠ Warning

Take care when operating the sunroof. There is a risk of injury, particularly to children.

Keep a close watch on the moving parts when operating the sunroof. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

The sunroof can be operated when the ignition is on, or in retained accessory power mode. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *167*.

Open or Close

Press ⌒ or ⌒ gently to the first detent: The sunroof is opened or closed as long as the switch is operated.

Press ⌒ or ⌒ firmly to the second detent then release: The sunroof is opened or closed automatically. During closing the safety function is enabled. To stop movement, operate the switch once more.

Raise or Close

Press ⌒ or ⌒: The sunroof is raised or closed automatically. During closing the safety function is enabled.

Sunblind

The sunblind can be manually operated. Close or open the sunblind by sliding.

When the sunroof is opened, the sunblind also opens. When the sunroof is raised, the sunblind does not open automatically; open it manually.

General Hints

Safety Function

If the sunroof encounters resistance during automatic closing, it is immediately stopped and opened again.

Safety Function Override

In the event of closing difficulties, e.g. due to frost, hold the switch ⌒ pressed to the second detent. The sunroof closes with safety

function disabled while the switch is held. To stop movement, release the switch.

Initialising the Sunroof

After a power failure, it may only be possible to operate the sunroof to a limited extent. Have the system initialised by your dealer.

Seats and Restraints

Head Restraints
Head Restraints 29

Front Seats
Seat Position 31
Seat Adjustment 32
Front Seat Armrest 33
Heated Front Seats 33

Rear Seats
Rear Seats 34

Seat Belts
How to Wear Seat Belts Properly 36
Three-Point Seat Belt 38
Seat Belt Use During Pregnancy 39
Seat Belt Care 39
Replacing Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash 39

Airbag System
Airbag System 39
Front Airbag System 40
Side Airbag System 41
Curtain Airbag System 42
What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates? 43
Notices for Customer Installed Equipment 43
Airbag System Check 43
Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash 44

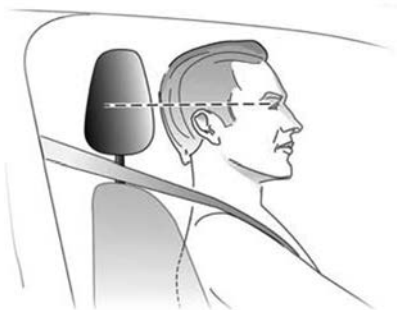
Child Restraints
Older Children 44
Infants and Young Children 45
Child Restraint Systems 46
Where to Put the Restraint 47
Top Tether Anchor Fittings 48
Child Restraint Installation Locations 48
ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems 49

Head Restraints

⚠ Warning

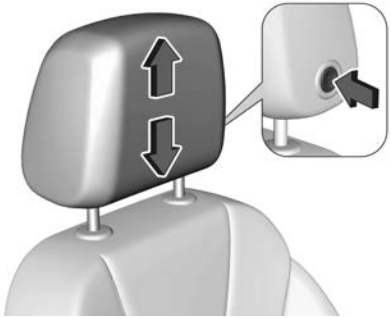
The head restraint is a safety feature.

The centre of the head restraint should be at eye level, never at neck level.



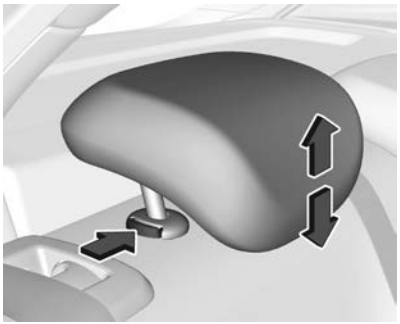
Adjustment

Front Seats



Press the release button, adjust the height and engage.

Rear Seat



Pull the head restraint upwards, or press the catch to release and push the head restraint downwards.

Removal

⚠ Warning

With head restraints that are not installed and adjusted properly, there is a greater chance that occupants will suffer a neck/spinal injury in a crash. Do not

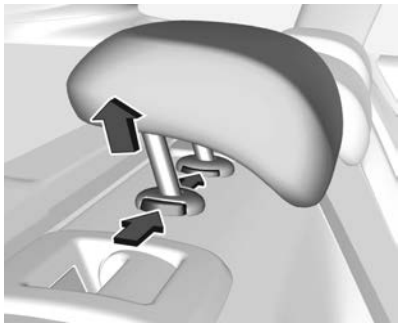
(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

drive until the head restraints for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.

Rear Seat

Removal of rear head restraints for load compartment extension, etc.



Press both catches, pull the head restraint upwards and remove.

Front Seats

Seat Position

⚠ Warning

To avoid reducing the effectiveness of seat belts, seatbacks should only be upright or at most semi-reclined when the vehicle is moving.

⚠ Warning

Do not sit closer than 25 cm to the steering wheel, to permit safe airbag deployment.

⚠ Warning

Do not fit unauthorised seat covers. Unauthorised seat covers may impair the operation of the side impact airbags (SIAB).

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Always sit centrally in the seat.

Do not place any object between the seat and the door or the seat and the centre console. See *Airbag System* ⇨ *39*.

- Sit with the buttocks as far back against the backrest as possible. Adjust the distance between the seat and the pedals so the legs are slightly angled when fully pressing the pedals. Slide the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Set the seat height high enough to have a clear field of vision on all sides and of all display instruments. There should be at least one hand width of clearance between the head and the roof frame. Your thighs should rest lightly on the seat without pressing into it.
- Sit with the shoulders as far back against the backrest as possible. Set the backrest rake so it is possible to easily reach the steering wheel with arms slightly bent. Maintain contact between shoulders and the backrest when turning the steering wheel. Do not angle the backrest too far back. We recommend a maximum rake of approx. 25°.
- Adjust the seat and steering wheel in a way that the wrist rests on top of the steering

wheel while the arm is fully extended and the shoulders are on the backrest.

- Adjust the steering wheel. See *Steering Wheel Adjustment* ⇨ *58*.
- Adjust the head restraint. See *Head Restraints* ⇨ *29*.
- Adjust the lumbar support so it supports the natural shape of the spine.

Seat Adjustment

⚠ Warning

Do not adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is moving as the seat could move suddenly causing the driver to lose control.

⚠ Warning

Before moving the seat, ensure the path both in front of and behind the seat is clear of obstructions.

Manual Seats

Drive only with seats and backrests engaged.

Note

The following shows all available configurations. Some may not be fitted to your vehicle.

Longitudinal Adjustment

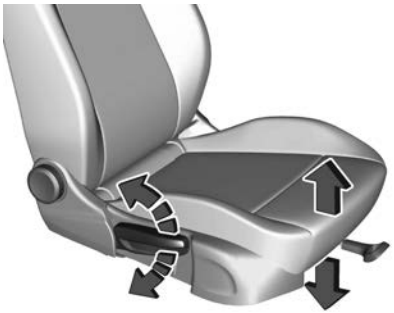
Lift the handle, slide the seat to the desired position then release the handle.

Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure the seat is locked in place.

Backrest Inclination

Turn the hand-wheel. Do not lean on backrest when adjusting.

Seat Height



Move the lever in a pumping motion:

Up : seat higher

Down : seat lower

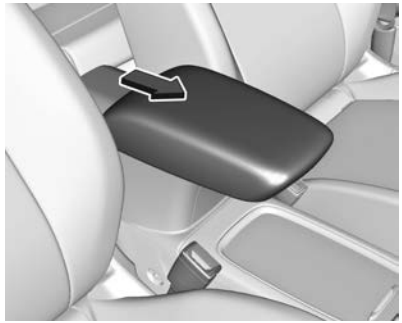
Lumbar Support

Adjust the lumbar support using the four-way switch to suit personal requirements.

To move the support up and down: push switch up or down.

To increase and decrease support: push switch forwards or backwards.

Front Seat Armrest



The armrest can be slid forwards by 10 cm.

Under the armrest is a storage compartment. See *Armrest Storage* ⇨ *52*.

Heated Front Seats

⚠ Warning

If you cannot feel temperature change or pain to the skin, the seat heater may cause burns. To

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

reduce the risk of burns, people with such a condition should use care when using the seat heater, especially for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket, cushion, cover, or similar item. This may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat heater may cause a burn or may damage the seat.

Do not fit any seat cover (except genuine Holden accessory covers) to heated seats.

Adjust seat heating to the desired setting by pressing for the seat one or more times. The lights in the button indicate the setting, three for the highest setting and one for the lowest.

Seat heating will be reduced automatically from the high to medium setting after 30 minutes.

Heated seats are operational when the engine is running and during an Autostop. See *Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ *168*.

Rear Seats

The vehicle has a two-section rear seat backrest. All sections can be folded down.

Before folding the rear seat backrests, perform the following if required:

- Remove the load compartment cover. See *Boot Cover* ⇨ *52*.
- Lower the rear head restraints. See *Head Restraints* ⇨ *29*.
- Remove the rear head restraints to allow the backrests to fully rest on the seat cushions. See *Head Restraints* ⇨ *29*.

⚠ Warning

Do not press the release button on the top of the seatback while the vehicle is moving. This could cause damage or injuries to the occupants.

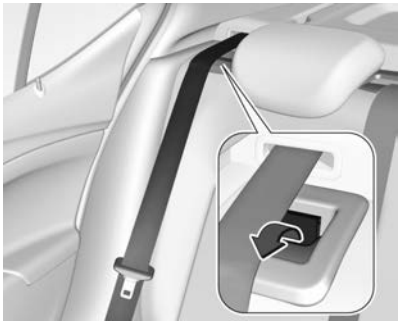
(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Do not allow passengers to sit on the folded seatbacks while the vehicle is in motion. Unrestrained luggage or passengers on a folded seatback could be thrown within or ejected from the vehicle in a sudden stop or accident.

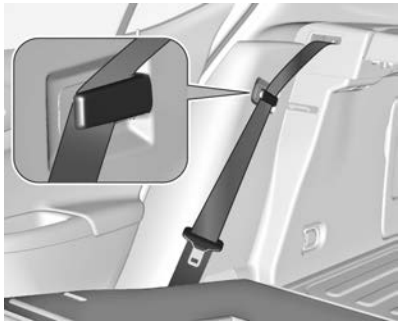
Caution

Do not trap the seat belt when returning the seatback or seat section to the upright position.



Guide the outer seat belts through side supports to protect them against damage. When folding the backrests, pull the seat belts along with them.

Pull the release lever on one or both outer sides and fold down the backrests onto the seat cushion.



Take the seat belt out of the seat backrest guide and put it behind the retainer as shown in the illustration.

To fold up, remove the seat belt from the retainer, raise the backrests and guide them into an upright position until they engage audibly.

The backrest is securely engaged when the red mark near the release lever is no longer visible.

⚠ Warning

When folding the rear seat backrest, ensure the backrest is securely locked in position before driving. Failure to do so may result in personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.

The centre seat belt might lock if the backrest is folded up too quickly. To unlock the seat belt retractor, push in the seat belt and withdraw it approx. 20 mm, then release.

Seat Belts

How to Wear Seat Belts Properly

⚠ Warning

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid.

Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

The seat belts are locked during heavy vehicle acceleration or deceleration, holding the occupants in the seat. Thereby the risk of injury is considerably reduced. Fasten the seat belt before each trip.

Periodically check all parts of the seat belt system for damage, soiling and correct functionality. Ensure they draw out smoothly and retract correctly when not in use. Have damaged components replaced immediately.

Note

Ensure the seat belts are not damaged by sharp-edged objects or trapped in a door, etc. Prevent dirt from getting into the belt retractors.

Seat Belt Reminder

Each seat is equipped with a seat belt reminder, indicated for front seats by and , or for rear seats by in the Driver Information Centre (DIC). See *Seat Belt Reminders* ⇨ *74*.

Belt Force Limiters

During a collision, stress on the body is reduced by the gradual release of the belt.

Seat Belt Pretensioners

In the event of a head-on, rear-end or side-on collision of a certain severity, the front seat belts and the outer rear seat belts are tightened by one pretensioner per seat.

Deployment of the belt pretensioners is indicated by continuous illumination of instrument cluster indicator . See *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *75*.

Seat belt pretensioners can only be triggered once and then must be replaced.

Note

- Do not affix or install accessories or other objects that may interfere with the operation of the belt pretensioners.
- Do not make any modifications to belt pretensioner components.

Three-Point Seat Belt

Fitting

The belt should not be twisted. It should lie flat and fit firmly across your hips.

1. Pull the metal tongue across your body.
2. Clip it into the buckle.
3. When the metal tongue is locked safely into place you will hear a click.
4. Give a gentle pull on the buckle to ensure full engagement.
5. Settle the belt at the hip.
6. Run your hand under the sash from hip to shoulder.

The belt should fit comfortably. Any extra belt length retracts automatically.

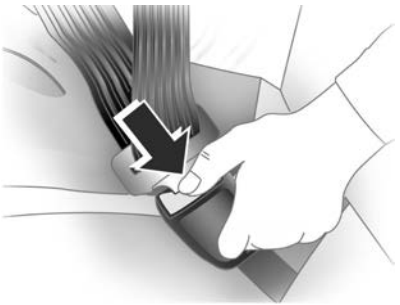
Note

For your safety, wear the lap section of the seat belt as low as possible on your hips, not on your waist or abdomen.

The Emergency-locking Retractor Belt allows you to move while the vehicle is travelling normally, but locks immediately on fast braking, impact with a solid object or any quick movement by the wearer.

Rear seat belts feature an Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR). If the shoulder portion of a rear seat belt is pulled out all the way, the locking feature may be engaged. If this happens, let the belt go back all the way and start again. See *Child Restraint Installation Locations* ⇨ *48*.

Removing



1. Press the release button on the buckle.

2. Allow the belt to retract.
3. Check that it fully retracts without twisting or turning.

Seat Belt Use During Pregnancy

Seat belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear a seat belt.

A pregnant woman should wear a three point belt with the lap portion of the belt worn as low as possible below the rounding of their stomach, throughout the pregnancy.

Seat Belt Care

⚠ Warning

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

Replacing Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash

⚠ Warning

It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

Airbag System

When triggered, airbags inflate within milliseconds. They also deflate so quickly that it is often unnoticeable during the collision.

⚠ Danger

Do not make any modifications to the airbag system.

The driver should sit back as far as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle. Sitting too close to the airbag can cause death or serious injury when it inflates.

Always wear a seat belt.

⚠ Warning

WARNING – EXTREME HAZARD!

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

The child could be seriously injured if the airbag inflates, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Remember that it is safest for children to be seated in the rear seats.

⚠ Warning

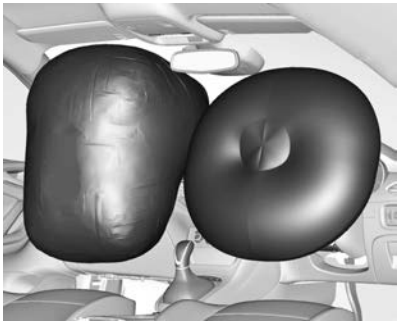
Airbags are part of the Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) as they assist, but do not replace seat belts.

Airbags do not deploy in every accident. Various factors dictate whether they deploy including speed, angle of collision and object hit. Airbags are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is hit from the rear or is involved in a rollover. Seat belts must be worn by all passengers whenever the vehicle is moving.

Airbags inflate with great force. If you are too close to an inflating airbag it may cause injury.

Seat belts help keep you in position for airbag inflation in the event of a collision.

Front Airbag System



The front airbag system consists of one airbag in the steering wheel and one in the instrument panel on the passenger side. These are identified by the word AIRBAG.

⚠ Warning

The horn pad must not be covered with adhesive or any other material.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

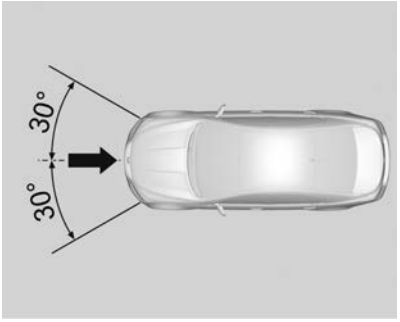
The driver should adjust the seat as far rearward as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Do not place any objects on or over the instrument panel or between an airbag and yourself.

Do not hang anything from the sun visor or mirror.

Passengers must not rest their feet on the instrument panel.



Front airbags will inflate in certain severe frontal or near frontal impacts. Front airbags are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is struck from the side, rear or in rollovers. Always wear a seat belt.

Side Airbag System

Side Impact Airbags (SIAB) are stored in the outer side of the front seats and can be identified by the word AIRBAG.

Note

SIAB deploy in most, but not all, severe side impacts.

Because there is limited time available to detect some side impacts, it is not possible to deploy the SIAB in all serious accidents.

A SIAB will deploy in certain severe side impacts. SIAB are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is struck from the front, rear, or in rollovers. Always wear a seat belt.

⚠ Warning

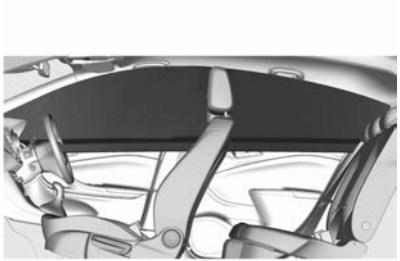
Do not fit any seat covers (except genuine Holden accessory covers) as they may impair the deployment of the Side Impact Airbags (SIAB).

Do not position your body or any object (including pillows) between front seats and doors.

Do not lean on, or sleep against, the door. Always sit centrally in the seat.

Always wear a seat belt.

Curtain Airbag System



Curtain airbags are stored in the roof on each side of the vehicle. They can be identified by the word AIRBAG on the roof pillars.

The curtain airbags deploy in most, but not all severe side impacts. The risk of injury to the head in the event of a side impact is considerably reduced.

⚠ Warning

Do not position your body or any object (including pillows) in the area in which the airbag inflates.

There must be no objects in the area in which the airbag inflates. Refer to the illustration.

Use the hooks above the doors only to hang up light articles of clothing.

Do not place any objects in the pockets of the hanging items.

Do not hold onto the assist grips (above the doors) while seated in the vehicle.

Do not lean on, or sleep against the front or rear doors. Always sit centrally in the seat.

Always wear a seat belt.

What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates?

Airbags inflate and deflate within milliseconds.

Fifteen seconds after any airbag or seat belt pretensioner has been activated (the vehicle has stopped and provided there is battery power), the following will occur:

- The engine will switch off.
- The fuel pump will switch off.
- The hazard lamps will switch on.
- The interior lamp will switch on.
- The doors will unlock.

Switch the ignition off and then on if restarting the engine is required.

Notices for Customer Installed Equipment

⚠ Warning

The fitting of roo bars may affect crash performance, airbag performance and engine cooling. See “Fitting roo bars” under *Add-On Electrical Equipment* ⇨ *224*.

Airbag System Check

The in the instrument cluster illuminates for a few seconds when the ignition is turned on. This indicates the Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) is operational.

Contact a Holden Dealer immediately:

- If does not illuminate when the ignition is turned on.
- If illuminates when driving.

- If the warning 'Airbag Fault' is displayed on the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

  In these instances the SRS may not function correctly in the event of an accident. See *Airbag System* ⇨ *39*.

Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash

Note

After an accident where the SRS has deployed, the systems, associated parts and hardware must be checked and replaced as required.

Seats, associated parts and hardware must also be checked and replaced as required.

The SRS should also be inspected after an accident if:

- The instrument panel area or steering wheel is scratched, cracked or damaged.
- The front seats and upholstery are damaged.
- The headliner or trim panels are damaged.

It is recommended that this work be carried out by a Holden Dealer or approved repairer.

Child Restraints

Older Children

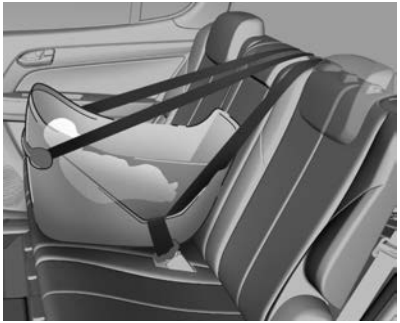
A child should use a normal three point seat belt only when:

- They can sit against the back of the seat with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat.
- The lap belt rests low and snug across the hips, not across the stomach.
- The sash belt is centred on the shoulder and chest.

- They are able to stay seated like this for the entire trip.

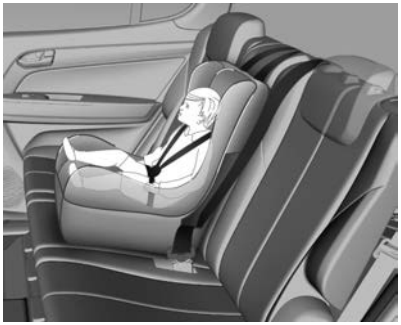
Infants and Young Children

Infants



Rearward facing infant capsules are designed so that in the event of a collision, impact forces will be evenly spread over the baby's back, with minimal jarring to the vulnerable head and neck area.

Young Children



Forward facing child seats are for use when the child is able to sit and easily hold their head upright.

Booster Seats

Booster seats are for when children outgrow a typical forward facing child seat, but are still too small for three point seat belts.

Child Restraint Systems

⚠ Warning

WARNING – EXTREME HAZARD!

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

The child could be seriously injured if the airbag inflates, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Remember that it is safest for children to be seated in the rear seats.

⚠ Warning

This manual provides you with general information concerning child restraints only.

The driver is required by law to ensure that passengers and pets are suitably restrained. In most States and Territories of Australia, and in New Zealand, specific laws may exist which require children to be seated in approved child restraints and/or in certain locations within the vehicle.

Holden strongly recommends that you refer to your specific State or Territory regulations to determine which child restraint and seat location is suitable for your child.

⚠ Warning

Always ensure that the seat belt fits firmly around the child restraint, as applicable to the type of restraint used.

If a child cannot see out of the window, do not raise him/her by means of an ordinary cushion. It will not stay in place in a collision and the child can slip out of the straps and become entangled.

⚠ Warning

Always follow the child restraint manufacturer's fitting instructions when installing a child restraint into the vehicle.

Note

Refer to the relevant legislation, an approved child restraint fitting station or capsule manufacturer's information for the recommended type of child restraint to use.

Selecting the Right System

Infants

Rearward facing infant capsules are designed so that in the event of a collision, impact forces will be evenly spread over the baby's back, with minimal jarring to the vulnerable head and neck area.

Young children

Forward facing child seats are for use when the child is able to sit and easily hold their head upright.

Booster seats

Booster seats are for when children outgrow a typical forward facing child seat, but are still too small for three point seat belts.

Older children

A child should use a normal three point seat belt only when:

- They can sit against the back of the rear seat with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat
- The lap belt rests low and snug across the hips, not across the stomach
- The sash belt is centred on the shoulder and chest
- They are able to stay seated like this for the entire trip

Where to Put the Restraint

⚠ Warning

It is safest for children to be seated in the rear seat.

Only child restraints that have clips to attach to the vehicle's anchorage fitting (as shown in the

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

following illustrations) are to be used. Earlier types of child restraints may not attach securely to this type of anchor.

Use only Standards Australia and New Zealand approved child restraints and harnesses. Only purchase a child restraint which carries the appropriate Standards Australia sticker of approval.

Australian States and Territories and New Zealand have laws restricting the seating of children in the front passenger seat. In most jurisdictions, children under 4 years should not be seated in the front passenger seat. Check your local road safety regulations before seating a child in the front seat.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

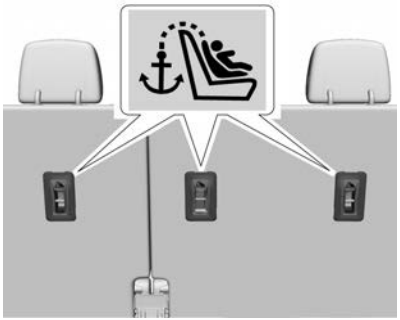
Where legally allowable, you may install a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, but always move the passenger seat as far back as it will go.

Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Note

If unsure about installing a child restraint anchor fitting, please contact an approved restraint fitting station or a Holden Dealer.

Top Tether Anchor Fittings



Top tether anchors are located on the back of the rear seat backs and are identified with symbol .

Do not attach anything other than a child restraint system to the vehicle top tether anchors.

Child Restraint Installation Locations

The vehicle has been designed to accommodate child restraints on the rear seat.

When using a child restraint, read the installation instructions supplied with the child restraint and follow the directions for fitting carefully.

Secure the child in the restraint in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

If unsure about installing a child restraint anchor fitting, contact an approved restraint fitting station or a Holden Dealer.

Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) Seat Belts

ALR seat belts are provided at the rear seating positions. Use these in conjunction with a top tether strap when a non-ISOFIX child seat is being used.

Extend the seat belt fully and then fit the belt around the applicable locations on the child restraint and fasten the buckle. Refer to the installation instructions supplied with the child restraint.

Allow the belt to retract. While the belt is retracting, a clicking noise can be heard which indicates the

ALR mechanism is functioning. The seat belt is locked and cannot be extended until fully retracted, enabling the belt to be fitted securely to the child restraint.

To release the locking mechanism, undo the buckle and allow the seat belt to fully retract. It will then function as a normal Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) seat belt until fully extended again.

ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems

ISOFIX mounting locations are marked by a on the rear seat back.

Open the cover and fasten the vehicle-approved ISOFIX child restraint to the ISOFIX mounting brackets.

Note

Ensure the seat belt buckles are placed out of the way of the child seat.

In addition to the ISOFIX mounting brackets, fasten the top-tether strap to the top-tether anchor points.

Storage

Storage Compartments
Storage Compartments 50
Glovebox 50
Cup-holders 50
Front Storage 51
Armrest Storage 52

Additional Storage Features
Boot Cover 52
Rear Floor Storage Cover 52
Cargo Tie-Downs 53

Roof Rack System
Roof Rack System 54

Information on Loading the Vehicle
Information on Loading the Vehicle 55

Storage Compartments

⚠ Warning

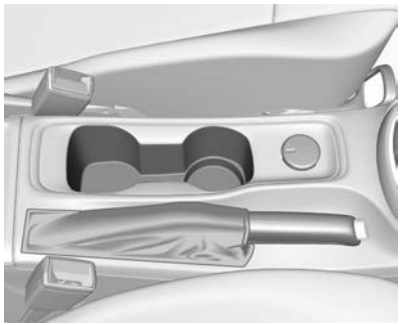
Do not store heavy or sharp objects in storage compartments. In a crash, these objects may cause the cover to open and could result in injury.

Glovebox

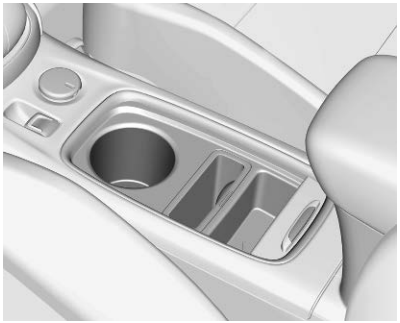
Open the glovebox by lifting the lever. The glovebox should always be closed whilst driving.

The glovebox also features pen and coin holders.

Cup-holders



Cup holders are located in the centre console.



If equipped, a cup holder, wireless charging slot and storage tray are located under a cover. Slide the cover rearward to open. See *Wireless Charging* ⇨ *64*.

Front Storage

A storage bin and/or phone holder may be located at the front of the centre console.

A storage box is located next to the steering wheel. Lift the latch to open.

Armrest Storage

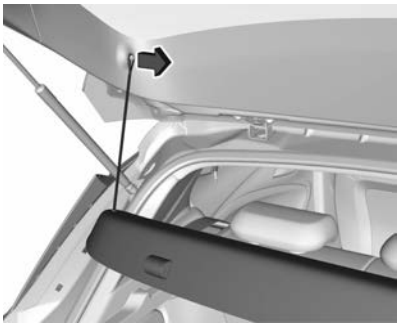
Push the button and raise the armrest. The armrest must be in the rearmost position before it can be opened.

Additional Storage Features

Boot Cover

Do not place any objects on the cover.

Removal



Unhook the retaining straps from the tailgate.

Lift the cover at the rear and then at the front.

Remove the cover.

Installation

Engage the cover in the side guides and insert downwards.

Attach the retaining straps to the tailgate.

Rear Floor Storage Cover

The rear floor cover can be removed.

Raise cover at the rear and slightly rotate at on side before removing.

Cargo Tie-Downs

The cargo tie-downs are designed to secure items against slippage and are to be used in conjunction with straps or a luggage net.

⚠ Warning

Always make sure the load is secure and will not move during heavy braking or a collision.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Unsecured loads increase the risk of injury during heavy braking, sudden avoidance manoeuvres or a collision.

Use only approved tie-down straps and convenience net to secure your loads. Do not use elasticised straps.

Never attach more than one tie-down strap to any single cargo tie-down.

Protect the tie-down straps from sharp edges of the load. Replace them if they begin to wear.

Make sure the back seat is locked in the upright position whenever carrying heavy loads. This is a basic requirement for protection against load displacement in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

The rear seat in the upright position provides greater protection against load displacement.

The driving characteristics of the vehicle can be affected because the centre of gravity is altered when there is a load in the cargo area. Match your speed and driving style according to how the vehicle is loaded.

Make sure the rear axle load of the vehicle is not exceeded. See “Axle loads” under *Vehicle Weight* ⇨ *279*.

The maximum load for the tie-down system is 80 kg single mass when used in conjunction with the Holden approved straps.

That is, if an object weighs 80 kg, only one object can be held by the tie-down system.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Do not use when there are visible signs of wear or damage.

Place loads as low down and as far forward in the cargo area as possible. That is, against the back seat.

The tie-downs are located at each corner of the rear compartment.

Roof Rack System

A Holden genuine roof rack system can be purchased as an accessory and used to load items.

For safety reasons and to avoid damage to the roof, only the approved roof rack is recommended. For further information, contact your dealer.

⚠ Warning

Ensure all objects carried on the roof rack system are loaded evenly and are secured tightly with straps.

Never carry objects that are longer or wider than the vehicle unless using a Holden certified accessory carrier.

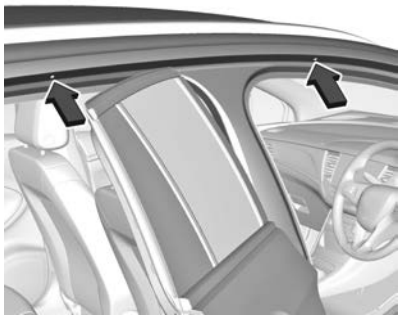
Caution

The load, including the weight of the roof rack, must not exceed 75 kg.

To prevent damage or loss of cargo when driving, check to ensure the roof rack and cargo are securely fastened.

Loading cargo on the roof rack will make the vehicle's centre of gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking, or abrupt manoeuvres; otherwise loss of control may result.

Fitting



Open all doors. The mounting points are located in each door frame of the vehicle's body.

Fasten the roof rack according to the installation instructions supplied with the roof rack.

Remove the roof rack when not in use.

Information on Loading the Vehicle

- Heavy objects in the load compartment should be placed against the seat backrests. Ensure the backrests are securely engaged and the red markings near the release lever are not visible.

  If objects are going to be stacked, heavier objects should be placed at the bottom.

- Secure loose objects in the load compartment to prevent them from sliding. Secure the load with straps attached to the cargo tie-down points. See *Cargo Tie-Downs* ⇨ *53*.

- Do not allow the load to protrude above the upper edge of the backrests.

- Do not place any objects on the load compartment cover or the instrument panel, and do not cover the sensor on top of the instrument panel.

- Do not place objects in the area where the front, side, or curtain airbags inflate.

- The load must not obstruct the operation of the pedals, parking brake and gear shift lever, or hinder the freedom of movement of the driver. Do not place any unsecured objects in the interior.

- Do not drive with an open load compartment.

- Do not exceed the maximum vehicle carrying capacity or vehicle axle loads. Overloading is a safety hazard. See *Vehicle Weight* ⇨ *279*.

- Driving with a roof load increases the sensitivity of the vehicle to cross-winds and has a detrimental effect on vehicle handling due to the vehicle's higher centre of gravity. Distribute the load evenly and secure it properly with retaining straps.

  Check and retighten the straps frequently.

  Adjust the tyre pressure and vehicle speed according to the load conditions.

  The permissible roof load is 75 kg. The roof load is the combined weight of the roof rack and the load.

Carrying Portable Gas Cylinders in Vehicles

⚠ Warning

Gas cylinders can leak, creating a risk of fire or explosion. As a precaution, ensure adequate

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

ventilation when carrying gas cylinders. They must be restrained from rolling around, and where possible, placed in the load area of the vehicle.

It is recommended that if gas cylinders are frequently transported, that a purpose-built carrying compartment be used. Ensure any transportation of gas cylinders complies with the applicable regulations.

Instruments and Controls

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment 58
Steering Wheel Controls 58
Heated Steering Wheel 59
Horn 59
Windscreen Wiper/Washer 60
Rear Window Wiper/Washer ... 62
Outside Temperature 63
Clock 63
Power Outlets 63
Wireless Charging 64

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Instrument Cluster 66
Speedometer 70
Odometer 71
Trip Odometer 71
Tachometer 72
Fuel Gauge 72
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge 72
Service Display 73
Turn Signal 74
Seat Belt Reminders 74
Airbag Readiness Light 75
Charging System Light 75
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 75
Brake System Warning Light ... 76
Electric Parking Brake Light ... 76
Service Electric Parking Brake Light 76
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light 77
Gear Shifting Light 77
Lane Keep Assist (LKA) Light 77
Vehicle Ahead Indicator 77
Follow Distance Indicator Light 77
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light 78
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator/Warning Light 78
Traction Control System (TCS) Off Light 78
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light 78
Engine Oil Pressure Light 78
Low Fuel Warning Light 79
Immobiliser Light 79
High-Beam On Light 79
Rear Fog Light 79
Lamps On Reminder 79
Cruise Control Light 79
Door open warning light 79

Information Displays

Driver Information Centre (DIC) 80

Vehicle Messages

Vehicle Messages 85
Warning Chimes 86
Battery Voltage and Charging Messages 86

Vehicle Personalisation

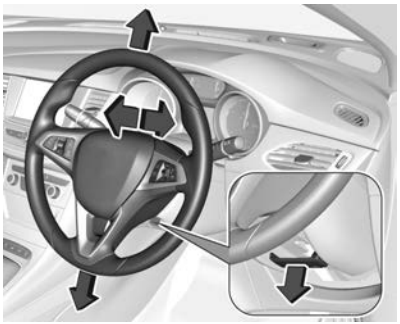
Vehicle Personalisation 87

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment

⚠ Warning

Do not attempt to adjust the steering wheel while driving.



Unlock the lever below the steering column. Adjust the steering wheel and then engage lever. Ensure it is fully locked.

Do not adjust the steering wheel unless the vehicle is stationary and the steering wheel lock has been released.

Steering Wheel Controls

Driver Information Centre (DIC) menus, the infotainment system and a connected mobile phone, and some driver assistance systems can be operated via the controls on the steering wheel.

The illustrations show different versions.

See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *80*, *Steering Wheel Controls* ⇨ *100* or *Driver Assistance Systems* ⇨ *183*.

Heated Steering Wheel

Activate the heated steering wheel by pressing . A LED in the switch will illuminate.

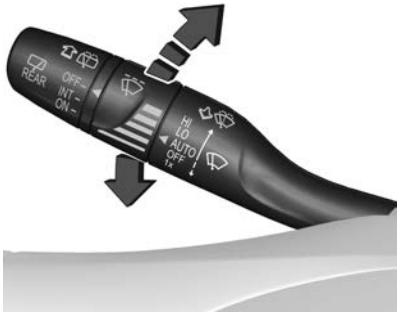
The recommended grip areas of the steering wheel are heated faster and to a higher temperature than the other areas. Heating is operational when the engine is running and during an Auto-stop.

Horn

Press .

Windscreen Wiper/ Washer

Windscreen Wiper



HI : fast

LO : slow

INT / AUTO : intermittent operation, or automatic operation with rain sensor (if equipped)

OFF : off

For a single wipe when the windscreen wiper is off, press the lever downwards to position **1x**.

Caution
Never operate the wipers on dry glass, as this will damage the rubber and scratch the glass.

Do not use if the windscreen is iced over. Switch off in car washes.

Intermittent Operation

Wiper lever in position INT.

Turn the adjuster band to adjust the wiper interval; up for shorter interval, down for longer interval.

Auto (Rain Sensor) Operation

In AUTO position, the rain sensor detects the amount of water on the windscreen and automatically regulates the frequency of the windscreen wiper.

Turn the adjuster band to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor; up for higher sensitivity, down for lower sensitivity.

Caution

Switch off the rain sensor by setting the lever to the **OFF** position before entering a car wash.

Replace the wiper blades as soon as they do not completely remove water from the windscreen. If the blades are not replaced, the wipers may continue to wipe even though most of the screen is dry.

To prevent damage to the wiper blades, make sure that the windscreen is fully defrosted before switching on the rain sensor.

Keep the sensor free from dust, dirt and ice.

The rain sensor function can be activated or deactivated. When it is deactivated, the wipers operate as manual intermittent wipers. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *87*.

Windscreen Washer

Pull the lever. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windscreen and the wiper operates a few times.

See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *238*.

Rear Window Wiper/ Washer

Rear Window Wiper

Turn the outer cap to activate the rear window wiper:

OFF : off

INT : intermittent operation

ON : continuous operation

Caution
Never operate the wipers on dry glass, as this will damage the rubber and scratch the glass.

Do not use if the rear window is frozen. Switch off in car washes.

The rear window wiper operates automatically when the windscreen wiper is switched on and reverse gear is engaged.

Activation or deactivation of this function can be changed. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *87*.

Rear Window Washer

Push the lever. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the rear window and the wiper operates a few times.

The rear window washer system is deactivated when the fluid level is low. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *238*.

Outside Temperature

The outside temperature is displayed in the infotainment screen when the ignition is on.

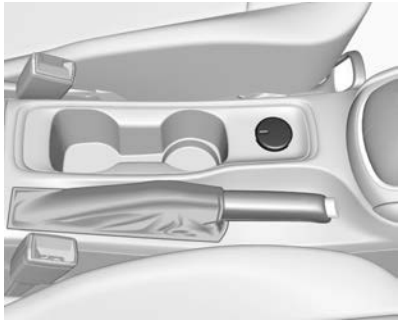
A drop in temperature is indicated immediately and a rise in temperature after a time delay.

If the outside temperature drops to 3°C, a warning message may be displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Clock

Set the time and date in the infotainment system. See *Settings* ⇨ *137*.

Power Outlets



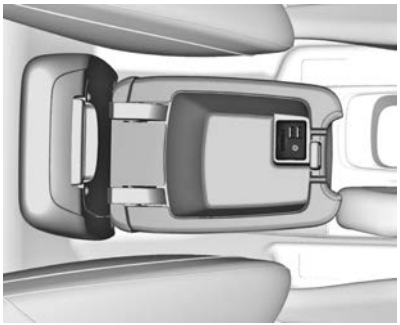
A 12 volt power outlet is located in the centre console.

With the ignition off or low vehicle battery voltage, the power outlet is deactivated.

Do not exceed the maximum power consumption of 120 watts.

Do not connect any current-delivering accessories, such as electrical charging devices or batteries. Do not damage the outlets by using unsuitable plugs.

USB Port



Depending on model, a single USB port is located at the rear of the centre console, or a dual USB port is located in the console armrest storage.

These USB ports can be used for charging devices and also include a data connection to the infotainment system.

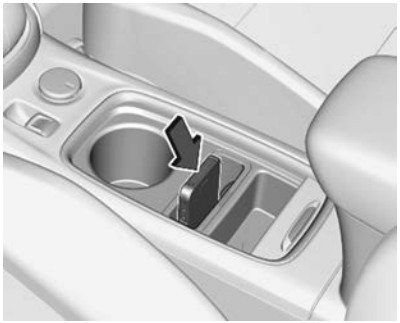
Note

If equipped, an SD card slot is provided for navigation system maps. Do not remove the SD card or use the slot for any other purpose.

Wireless Charging

⚠ Warning

Wireless charging can affect the operation of an implanted pacemaker or other medical devices. If you have one, it is recommended to consult with your doctor before using the wireless charging system.



The vehicle may have a wireless charging slot located below the console cover.

To charge a compatible mobile device the ignition must be switched on.

⚠ Warning

Remove any metal objects from the charging device before charging a mobile phone, as these objects could become very hot.

To charge a mobile device:

1. Remove all objects from the charging slot, otherwise the system may not charge.
2. Insert the mobile device with the display facing to the rear in the charging slot. The charging status is indicated in the infotainment display and shows the mobile device is correctly positioned.

If is not displayed, remove mobile device from the slot. Turn mobile device 180 degrees and wait three seconds before inserting mobile device again.

Note

- PMA, Qi and A4WP compatible mobile devices can be charged wirelessly.
- On some devices, a back cover with an integrated coil or a jacket may be required to use wireless charging.
- The mobile device must be smaller than 8 cm in width and 15 cm in length to fit into the charging device. A protective cover for the mobile phone could have an impact on wireless charging.

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Instrument Cluster

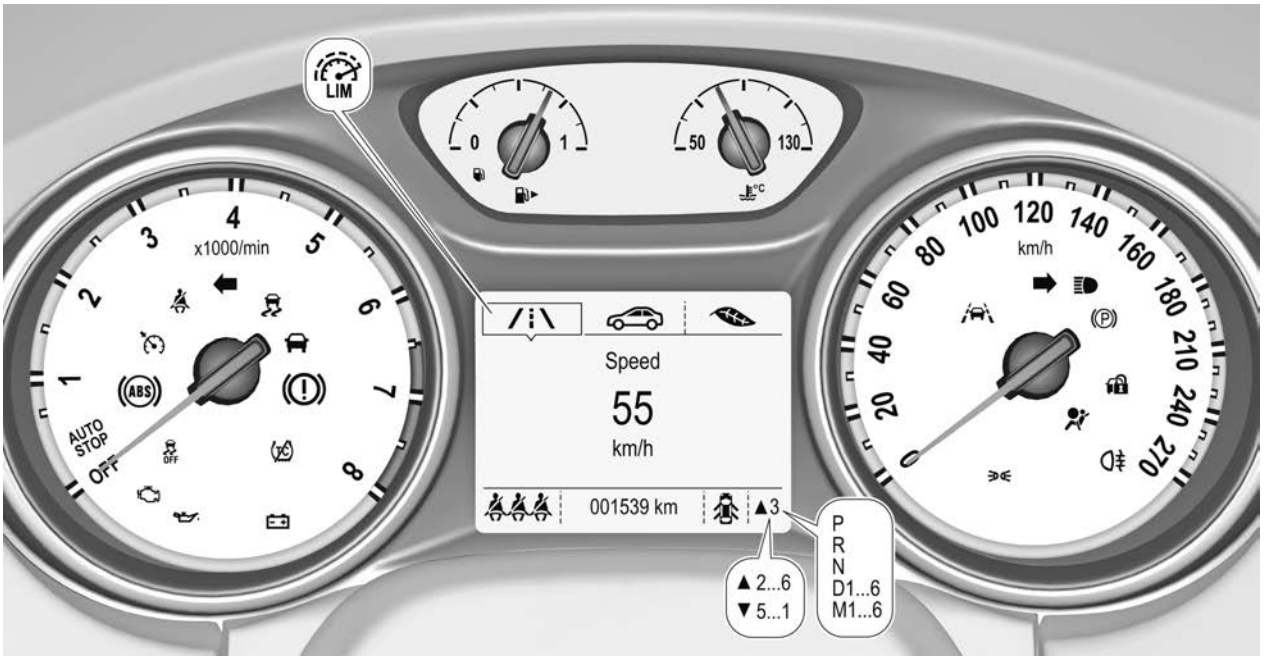
Depending on the model, two instrument clusters are available.

The Type 2 instrument cluster can be displayed in Sport mode or Touring mode. The left and right-hand minor gauges can also be changed. See “Display Theme” and “Pocket Gauges” under “Options Page Items” in *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *80*.

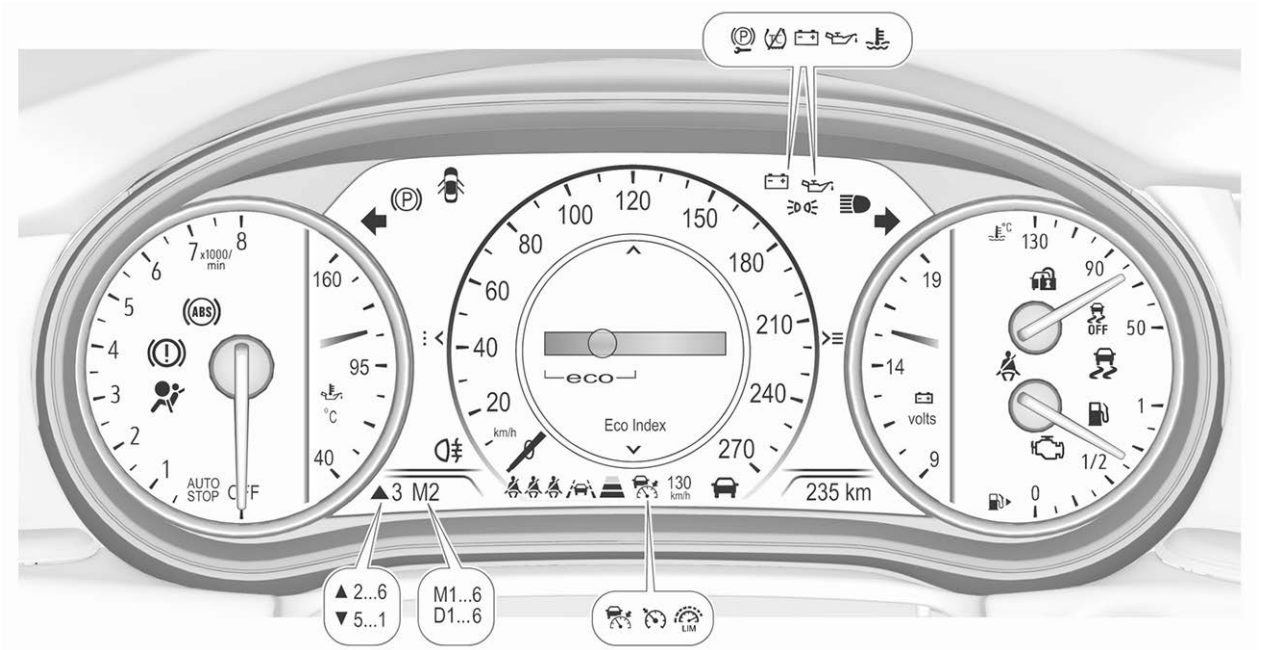
Note

Displays may vary depending on vehicle options and equipment.

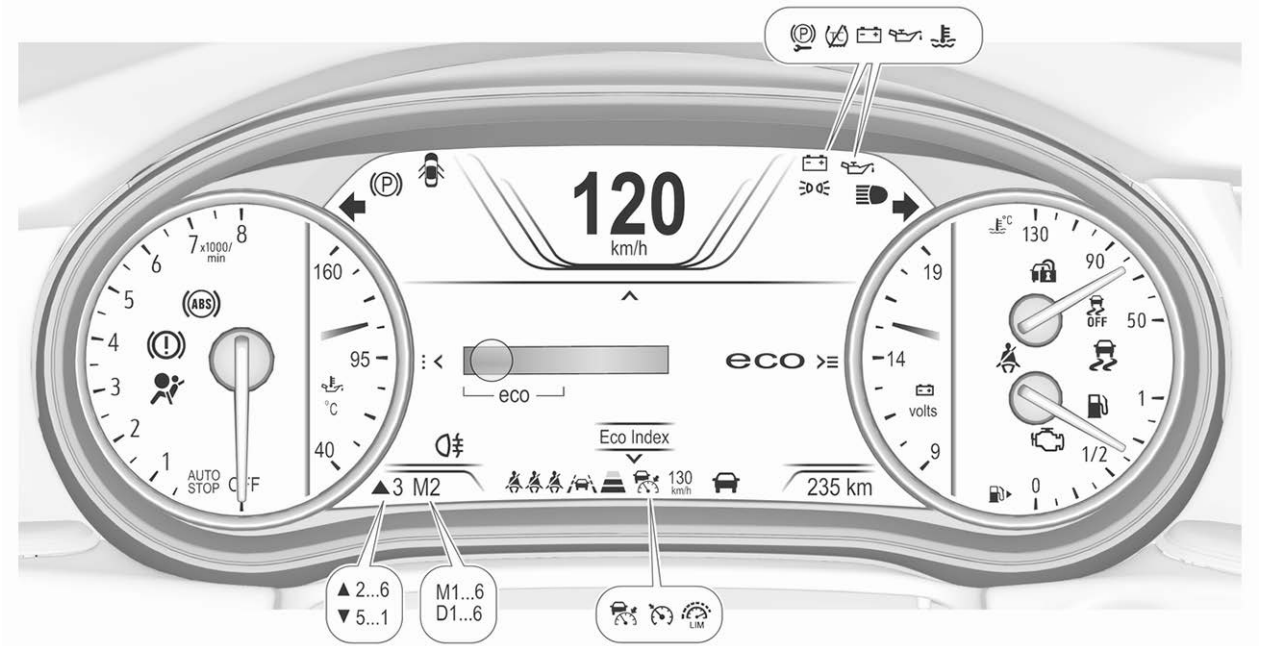
Type 1


LIM
0
1
50
130
°C
4
x1000/min
1
2
3
5
6
7
8
ABS
AUTO STOP
OFF
OFF
100
120
140
160
80
60
40
20
180
210
240
270
km/h
Speed
55
km/h
001539 km
▲3
▲ 2...6
▼ 5...1
P
R
N
D1...6
M1...6

Type 2



Sport Mode



Touring Mode

Overview

: Adaptive cruise control, see *Cruise Control Light* ⇨ *79*

: *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *75*

: *Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light* ⇨ *77*

: *Brake System Warning Light* ⇨ *76*

: *Charging System Light* ⇨ *75*

: *Cruise Control Light* ⇨ *79*

: *Door open warning light* ⇨ *79*

: *Electric Parking Brake Light* ⇨ *76*

: *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator/Warning Light* ⇨ *78*

: *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light* ⇨ *78*

: *Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light* ⇨ *78*

: *Engine Oil Pressure Light* ⇨ *78*

: *Follow Distance Indicator Light* ⇨ *77*

▲▼ : *Gear Shifting Light* ⇨ *77*

: *High-Beam On Light* ⇨ *79*

: *Immobiliser Light* ⇨ *79*

: *Lamps On Reminder* ⇨ *79*

: *Lane Keep Assist (LKA) Light* ⇨ *77*

: *Low Fuel Warning Light* ⇨ *79*

: *Malfunction Indicator Lamp* ⇨ *75*

: *Rear Fog Light* ⇨ *79*

: *Seat Belt Reminders* ⇨ *74*

: *Service Electric Parking Brake Light* ⇨ *76*

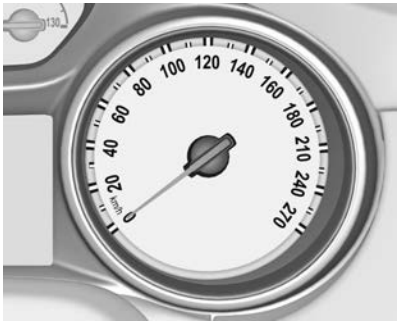
: *Speed Limiter* ⇨ *196*

: *Traction Control System (TCS) Off Light* ⇨ *78*

⇦⇨ : *Turn Signal* ⇨ *74*

: *Vehicle Ahead Indicator* ⇨ *77*

Speedometer



Indicates vehicle speed.

Odometer

The total recorded distance the vehicle has travelled is displayed in km.

Note

On the Type 1 cluster, when the engine is first started the odometer display is replaced by the rear seat belt reminders until the vehicle is driven a short distance.

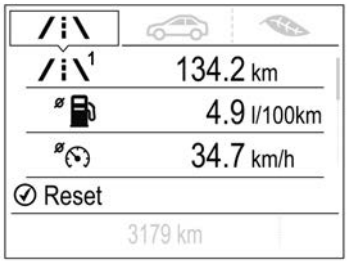
Trip Odometer

The recorded distance since the last reset is displayed on the trip odometer page.

The trip odometer counts up to 9,999 km and then restarts at 0.

Two trip odometer pages are selectable for different trips.

Type 1

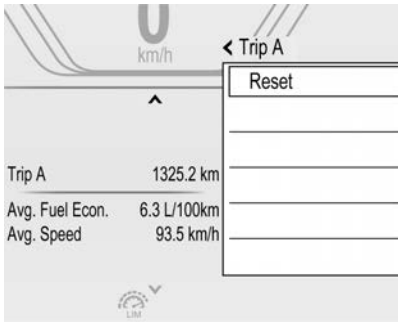


Select ⁄ ⁞ \ by pressing **Menu** on the turn signal lever.

Turn the adjuster wheel on the turn signal lever and select ⁄ ⁞ \ ¹ or ⁄ ⁞ \ ².

Each trip odometer page can be reset separately by pressing **SET/ CLR** on the turn signal lever for a few seconds while the menu is displayed.

Type 2



Select **Info** page on the main menu. Choose page **Trip A** or **Trip B** by pressing ▽ on the steering wheel.

Each trip can be reset separately when ignition is on: Select the page, press ▷.

Confirm by pressing ✓.

Tachometer

Displays the engine speed. As much as possible, drive with a low engine speed range for each gear.

Caution
If the needle is in the red warning zone, the maximum permitted engine speed is exceeded. The engine is at risk. Reduce engine speed.

Fuel Gauge

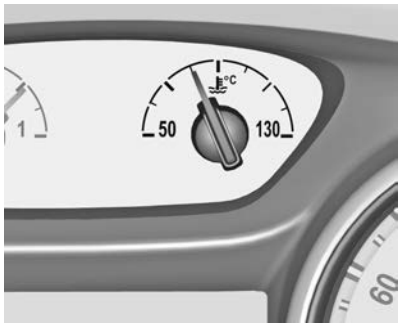
Displays the fuel level within the fuel tank.

The arrow indicates the vehicle side where the fuel filler door is located.

illuminates if the fuel level is low. Refuel immediately if it flashes. Never run the fuel tank dry.

Because of fuel remaining in the tank, the top-up quantity may be less than the specified fuel tank capacity.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge



Displays the engine coolant temperature.

50° : engine operating temperature not yet reached

90° (central area) : normal operating temperature

130° : temperature too high

Note

If engine coolant temperature is too high, stop the vehicle, idle the engine and check the coolant level. See *Engine Overheating* ⇨ *236*.

Service Display

The engine oil life system informs you when to change the engine oil and filter. Based on driving conditions, the interval at which an engine oil and filter change will be indicated can vary considerably.

The remaining oil life menu is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *80*.

To view the remaining oil life.

For vehicles with MENU button on the turn signal lever:

- Select the screen by pressing **MENU** on the turn signal lever.
- Turn the adjuster wheel to select the Remaining Oil Life page.

For vehicles with steering wheel control switches:

- If required, navigate to the Info page **i** by pressing ◁ on the steering wheel, scroll using ▽ and confirm by pressing ✓.
- Press ▽ to select the Remaining Oil Life page.

Remaining oil life duration is indicated as a percentage, so if 100% is displayed that means 100% of the current oil life remains.

Reset

The system must be reset every time the engine oil is changed to allow correct functionality. Seek the assistance of your dealer.

For vehicles with MENU button on the turn signal lever:

- With the Remaining Oil Life page displayed, press **SET/CLR** on the turn signal lever for several seconds to reset.

  The ignition must be switched on but engine not running.

For vehicles with steering wheel control switches:

- With the Remaining Oil Life page displayed, press ▷ on the steering wheel to open the sub-folder.
- Select **Reset** and confirm by pressing ✓ for several seconds.

  The ignition must be switched on but engine not running.

Next Service

When the system has calculated that the engine oil is approaching the end of its life, Change Engine Oil Soon appears in the Driver Information Centre. Have the engine oil and filter changed within one week or 1000 km (whichever occurs first).

It is possible that if you are driving under the best conditions, the oil life system may not indicate an oil change is necessary for a longer period than that shown in the Maintenance schedule. However, the engine oil and filter must be changed in accordance with the Maintenance schedule outlined in the Service & Warranty Booklet.

Turn Signal

⇦⇨ flashes green.

A turn signal or the hazard warning flashers are activated.

Rapid flashing: Failure of a turn signal bulb or associated fuse, failure of a turn signal light on a trailer.

See *Bulb Replacement* ⇨ *241*, *Fuses* ⇨ *246*, *Turn and Lane-Change Signals* ⇨ *93*.

Seat Belt Reminders

Front Seats

for the driver's seat illuminates or flashes red in the instrument cluster.

$_2$ for front passenger's seat illuminates or flashes red in the roof console, when the seat is occupied.

- Illuminates: After the ignition has been turned on until the seat belt is fastened.
- Flashes: After having started the engine for a maximum of 100 seconds until the seat belt is fastened.

Rear Seats

Type 1:

illuminates or flashes white or grey in the Driver Information Centre after having started the engine. Extinguishes after a period of time when the vehicle is driven.

- Illuminates white: Seat belt is unfastened.
- Illuminates grey: Seat belt is fastened.
- Flashes white or grey: Fastened seat belt has been unfastened.

Type 2:

illuminates red in the instrument cluster after having started the engine. Extinguishes after a period of time when the vehicle is driven.

- Illuminates red: Seat belt is unfastened.
- Symbol extinguishes, grey rectangle illuminates: Seat belt is fastened.
- Flashes red: Fastened seat belt has been unfastened.

See *Three-Point Seat Belt* ⇨ *38*.

Airbag Readiness Light

illuminates red.

When the ignition is switched on, the indicator illuminates for approx. four seconds. If it does not illuminate, does not go out after four seconds or illuminates whilst driving, there is a fault in the airbag system. Seek the assistance of a dealer.

⚠ Warning

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on while driving, it means the airbag system might not be working properly. The airbags in the vehicle might not inflate in a crash, or they could even inflate without a crash. To help avoid injury, have the vehicle serviced right away.

See *Airbag System* ⇨ *39*.

Charging System Light

illuminates red.

Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

If it illuminates when the engine is running, stop and turn the engine off. The vehicle's battery is not charging. Engine cooling may be interrupted and the brake servo unit may cease to be effective.

Seek the assistance of a dealer.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

Illuminates When the Engine is Running

A fault has been detected in the emission control system. The permitted emission limits may be exceeded.

Flashes When the Engine is Running

A fault that could lead to catalytic converter damage has been detected. Ease up on the accelerator until the flashing stops. Seek the assistance of a dealer immediately.

Caution

If the vehicle is driven while this light is on, the emission controls might not operate correctly, the vehicle's fuel economy may increase, and the engine might not run smoothly. This may lead to costly repairs that might not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Modifications made to the engine, transmission, exhaust, intake, or fuel system can affect the vehicle's emission controls and can cause this light to illuminate. Modifications to these systems could lead to costly repairs not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Brake System Warning Light

(!) illuminates red.

The brake fluid level is too low.

⚠ Warning

The brake system might not be working properly if the brake system warning light is on. Driving with the brake system warning light on can lead to a crash. If the light is still on after the vehicle has been pulled off the road and carefully stopped, have the vehicle towed for service.

Electric Parking Brake Light

(P) illuminates or flashes red.

Illuminates

The electric parking brake is applied.

Flashes

The electric parking brake is not fully applied or released. Press the brake pedal and attempt to reset the system by first releasing then applying the electric parking brake.

If (P) keeps flashing, do not drive and seek the assistance of a dealer.

See *Electric Parking Brake* ⇨ *177*.

Service Electric Parking Brake Light

(P) illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates

The electric parking brake is operating with degraded performance.

Flashes

The electric parking brake is in service mode. Stop the vehicle, apply and release the electric parking brake to reset.

See *Electric Parking Brake* ⇨ *177*.

⚠ Warning

Have the cause of the fault remedied immediately. Avoid parking on inclines until the cause of the fault has been rectified.

Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light

(ABS) illuminates yellow.

Illuminates for a few seconds after the ignition is switched on. The system is ready for operation when the control indicator extinguishes.

If (ABS) does not go out after a few seconds, or if it illuminates while driving, there is a fault in the ABS. The brake system remains operational but without ABS regulation.

See *Antilock Brake System (ABS)* ⇨ *176*.

Gear Shifting Light

▲ or ▼ with the number of a higher or lower gear is indicated when shifting up or down is recommended to save fuel.

Lane Keep Assist (LKA) Light

illuminates green or yellow, or flashes yellow.

Illuminates Green

The system is switched on and ready to operate.

Illuminates Yellow

The system is approaching a detected lane marking without the turn signal being used in that direction.

Flashes Yellow

The system recognises that the vehicle has departed significantly from the lane.

See *Lane Keep Assist (LKA)* ⇨ *216*.

Vehicle Ahead Indicator

illuminates green or yellow.

Illuminates Green

A vehicle ahead is detected in the same lane.

Illuminates Yellow

The distance to a preceding moving vehicle has become too small, or when approaching another vehicle too rapidly.

See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *205*, *Adaptive Cruise Control* ⇨ *198*.

Follow Distance Indicator Light

indicates the timing sensitivity for the Following Distance alert setting for the Forward Collision alert.

Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System ⇨ *205*.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light

illuminates yellow.

The system is deactivated.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator/Warning Light

illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates

A fault in the system is detected. Continued driving is possible. However, driving stability may deteriorate, depending on the road surface conditions. Have the cause of the fault remedied by a dealer.

Flashes

The system is actively engaged. Engine output may be reduced and the vehicle may be braked automatically to a small degree.

See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* ⇨ *181*, *Traction Control System (TCS)* ⇨ *180*.

Traction Control System (TCS) Off Light

illuminates yellow.

The system is deactivated.

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light

illuminates red.

If this illuminates when the engine is running, stop and switch the engine off.

Note

If engine coolant temperature is too high, stop vehicle, idle the engine and check the coolant level. See *Engine Overheating* ⇨ *236*.

Engine Oil Pressure Light

illuminates red.

Illuminates when the ignition is turned on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

Illuminates When the Engine is Running

Caution
Engine damage may result if you keep driving. Do not run the engine. If the oil level is normal, have the system checked by your dealer.

If illuminates while driving, do the following.

1. Move out of the flow of traffic as quickly as possible without impeding other vehicles and stop the vehicle in a safe location.
2. Turn the ignition off.
3. Check the engine oil level. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *233*.

   If required, seek the assistance of a dealer.

Low Fuel Warning Light

illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates

The fuel level in the fuel tank is low. Refill as soon as possible.

Flashes

Fuel very low. Refuel immediately. Never run the tank dry.

See *Filling the Tank* ⇨ *219*.

Immobiliser Light

flashes yellow.

There is a fault in the immobiliser system. The engine cannot be started.

See *Immobiliser* ⇨ *21*.

High-Beam On Light

illuminates blue.

Illuminates when high beam is on or during a headlight flash.

See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer* ⇨ *91*.

Rear Fog Light

illuminates yellow.

The rear fog lamp is on.

See *Rear Fog Lights* ⇨ *93*.

Lamps On Reminder

illuminates green.

The exterior lights are on.

See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *90*.

Cruise Control Light

illuminates white or green.

Illuminates White

The system is on.

Illuminates Green

Cruise control is active. The set speed is indicated in the Driver Information Centre.

See *Cruise Control* ⇨ *194*.

Adaptive Cruise Control

illuminates in the Driver Information Centre.

Illuminates White

The system is on.

Illuminates Green

Adaptive cruise control is active.

See *Adaptive Cruise Control* ⇨ *198*.

Door open warning light

illuminates red.

A door or the tailgate is open.

Information Displays

Driver Information Centre (DIC)

The Driver Information Centre (DIC) is located in the instrument cluster. Two DICs are available depending on the vehicle model.

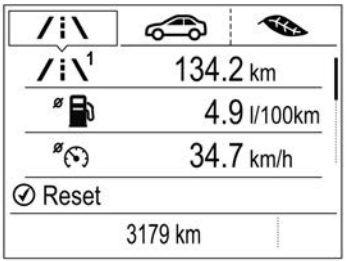
The following functions may be available in the DIC.

Note

The following describes possible options. Some may not be available in your vehicle.

- Odometer and trip odometer
- Vehicle information and settings
- Trip/Fuel information
- Driving economy information
- Vehicle and warning messages
- Audio and infotainment information
- Phone information
- Navigation information

Type 1



Main menu symbols are indicated in the top line of the display:

: Trip/Fuel Information

: Vehicle Information

: ECO Information

Some of the displayed functions differ when the vehicle is being driven or when it is at a standstill. Some functions are only available when the vehicle is being driven.

Selecting Menus and Functions

The menus and functions can be selected via the buttons on the turn signal lever.

Press **MENU** to switch between the main menus or to return from a submenu to the next higher menu level.

Turn the adjuster band to select a submenu of the main menu or to set a numeric value.

Press **SET/CLR** to select and confirm a function.

Vehicle and service messages are popped up in the Driver Information Centre as required. Confirm messages by pressing **SET/CLR**. See *Vehicle Messages* ⇨ *85*.

The following lists contain possible menu pages. Some may not be available for your particular vehicle. Some functions are symbolised.

Trip/Fuel Information Menu (/ ⁞ \)

- Digital Speed
- Trip (1 or 2)

  Average Fuel Consumption (1 or 2)

  Average Speed (1 or 2)
- Fuel

  Fuel Economy

  Fuel Range
- Timer

Digital Speed : Digital display of the instantaneous speed.

Trip (1 or 2) : Trip odometer: Displays the current distance since last reset. The trip odometer counts up to a distance of 9,999 km then restarts at 0.

Average Fuel Consumption: Displays average consumption for the current Trip. The measurement can be reset at any time and starts with a default value.

Average Speed: Displays average speed for the current Trip. The measurement can be reset at any time.

To reset, press **SET/CLR** for a few seconds.

Fuel : Fuel Economy: Displays the instantaneous consumption and estimated fuel range until empty.

Fuel Range: The range is calculated from the current fuel tank level and current consumption. The display shows average values. After refuelling, the range is updated automatically after a brief delay.

Timer : To start, stop and reset press **SET/CLR**.

Vehicle Information Menu ( )

- Following Distance
- Remaining Oil Life
- Speed Warning

Following Distance : Displays the distance in seconds to a preceding moving vehicle. See *Following Distance Indication System* ⇨ *209*.

Remaining Oil Life : Indicates an estimate of the oil's useful life. Remaining oil life duration is indicated as a percentage, so if 100% is displayed that means 100% of the current oil life remains. See *Service Display* ⇨ *73*.

Speed Warning : The speed warning display allows you to set a speed that you do not want to exceed.

To set the speed warning, press **SET/CLR** while the page is displayed.

ECO Information Menu ( )

- Fuel Economy
- Economy Trend

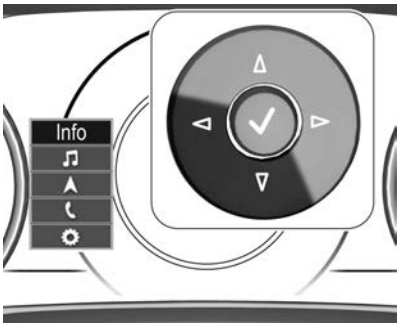
- ECO Index

Fuel Economy : Displays instantaneous, average and best fuel consumption over a specified distance. To change press **SET/CLR**.

Economy Trend : Displays the average consumption usage over a distance of 50 km. Filled segments display the consumption in 5 km steps and shows the effect of topography or driving behaviour on fuel consumption.

Economy (ECO) Index : The current fuel consumption is indicated on an economical scale. For economical driving, adapt driving style to keep the filled segments within the ECO area. The more segments filled, the higher the fuel consumption. The average consumption value is indicated simultaneously.

Type 2



Main menu symbols are indicated in the left of the display:

: Info (Information)

: Audio

: Nav (Navigation)

: Phone

: Options

Note
Some of the displayed functions may differ when the vehicle is being driven or at a standstill.

Selecting Menus and Functions

The menus and functions can be selected via the buttons on the right-hand side of the steering wheel.

Press ◁ to open the main pages menu.

Select a main page with ▽ or △. Press ✓ to confirm.

Once a main page is selected, press ▽ or △ to select sub-pages.

If available, press ▷ to open an options menu of the selected sub-page.

Press ▽ or △ to select menu items or to set a numeric value, as required. Press ✓ to confirm.

Once a page is selected, this selection remains stored until another page is selected.

Vehicle and service messages are popped up in the Driver Information Centre as required. Confirm messages by pressing ✓. See *Vehicle Messages* ⇨ *85*.

Info (Information) Page Items

The following is a list of possible items that can be displayed on the Information page. Some may not be available for your particular vehicle.

Some items may not be turned on by default but can be turned on from the Options page. See “Options Page Items” further in this section.

Digital Speed : (Sport mode display) Digital display of the current vehicle speed in kilometres per hour.

Trip A or Trip B, Average Fuel Economy, Average Speed : Displays the distance travelled in kilometres (km) since this page was reset.

The Average Fuel Economy displays the approximate average litres per 100 kilometres (L/100 km). This number is calculated based on the number of L/100 km recorded since the last time this page was reset. This number reflects only the approximate average fuel economy the vehicle has right now, and will change as driving conditions change.

The Average Speed displays the average speed of the vehicle in kilometres per hour (km/h). This average is calculated based on the various vehicle speeds recorded since the last reset of this value.

To reset, press ▷ and select Reset All in the menu.

Fuel Range and Instantaneous Fuel Economy : Displays the approximate distance the vehicle can be driven without refuelling. LOW will be displayed when the vehicle is low on fuel. The fuel range estimate is based on an average of the vehicle's fuel economy over recent driving history and the amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

The Instantaneous Fuel Economy displays the current fuel economy in litres per 100 kilometres (L/100 km). This number reflects only the approximate fuel economy that the vehicle has right now and changes frequently as driving conditions change. When the vehicle is at idle, fuel usage in Litres per Hour (L/Hr) is displayed.

Remaining Oil Life : Indicates an estimate of the engine oil's useful life. Remaining oil life duration is indicated as a percentage, so if 100% is displayed that means 100% of the current oil life remains. See *Service Display* ⇨ *73*.

Fuel Economy : Displays the average fuel economy and best fuel economy over the selected distance as a bar graph.

Press ▷ to change the selected distance or to reset the best fuel economy and average fuel economy.

Timer : To start the timer, press ▷ while this display is active and select Start Timer. The display will show the amount of time that has passed since the timer was last reset. To stop the timer, press ▷ while this display is active and the timer is running. Select Stop Timer. To reset the timer to zero, press ▷ and select Reset Timer.

Driver Assistance : Displays information for the Lane Keep Assist (LKA) and Forward Collision Alert systems.

Follow Distance : The following-distance to a moving vehicle ahead in your path is indicated in following-time in seconds. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *205*.

Economy Trend : Displays history of the Average Fuel Economy from the last 50 km. Each bar represents about 5 km of driving. During driving the bars will shift to always reflect the most recent distance on the right side. Press ▷ to select Reset.

Economy (ECO) Index : The current fuel consumption is indicated in an economic scale. For economical driving, adapt driving style to keep the filled segments within the ECO area. The more segments filled, the higher the fuel consumption. The average consumption value is indicated simultaneously.

Audio Page Items

Enables browsing for music, selecting from favourites or changing the audio source. Press ▷ to display the audio menu.

Navigation Page Items

Displays location or route guidance. Press ▷ to display the navigation menu.

Phone Page Items

Enables managing and performing phone calls, scrolling through contacts or operating a connected hands free mobile phone.

Options Page Items

Display Theme : There are two instrument cluster display configurations to choose from. Press ▷ to select Sport or Touring.

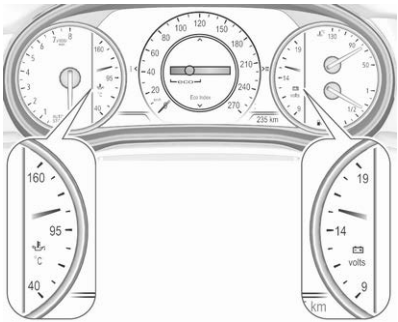
Info Pages : Press ▷ to open a list of items that can be displayed or turned off in the Info (Information) pages.

1. Press ▽ or △ to scroll the items.
2. Press ✓ while an item is highlighted to select or deselect that item. When an item is selected, a check-mark will appear next to it.

Speed Warning : This display is used to set the vehicle speed at which the speed warning chime sounds and an alert is displayed.

Press ▷ to enable or disable. Once enabled, select Set Speed and adjust by pressing ▽ or △. Press ✓ to confirm.

Pocket Gauges :



Allows customisation of the left and right-hand minor gauges.

Press ▷ and select Edit Gauges. The left-hand gauge is highlighted. Press ▽ or △ to scroll through the available options. Press ▷ to change to the right-hand gauge. Press ✓ to confirm.

Available options may include: Fuel Range, IFE-AFE (Instantaneous Fuel Economy-Average Fuel Economy), Battery Voltage, Oil Temperature, Blank.

Software Information : Displays software information and licence agreements.

Vehicle Messages

Messages are indicated in the Driver Information Centre, in some cases together with a warning and signal buzzer.

On vehicles with a MENU button in the turn signal lever, press **SET/ CLR** on the turn signal lever to confirm a message.

On vehicles with steering wheel controls, press ✓ to confirm a message.

Vehicle and Service Messages

The vehicle messages are displayed as text. Follow the instructions given in the messages.

Messages in the Infotainment Display

Some important messages may appear additionally in the infotainment system display. Press the multifunction knob to confirm a message. Some messages only pop up for a few seconds.

Warning Chimes

When Starting the Engine or Whilst Driving

Only one warning will sound at a time. The warning for a not-fastened seat belt has priority over any other warning. Depending on vehicle model, warnings may sound:

- If a seat belt is not fastened.
- If a door or the tailgate is not fully closed when starting off.
- If a certain speed is exceeded with the parking brake applied.
- If the adaptive cruise control deactivates automatically.
- If approaching a vehicle ahead too closely.
- If a programmed speed or speed limit is exceeded.
- If a warning message appears in the Driver Information Centre.
- If the RKE transmitter is not in the passenger compartment.
- If the parking assist detects an object.
- If an unintended lane change occurs.

When the Vehicle is Parked and/or the Driver's Door is Opened

- With exterior lights on.

During an Autostop

- If the driver's door is opened.
- If any condition for an Autostop is not fulfilled.

Battery Voltage and Charging Messages

When the vehicle battery voltage is running low, a warning message will appear in the Driver Information Centre.

1. Switch off any electricity consumers that are not required for a safe ride such as seat heating, heated rear window or other power consumers.
2. Charge the vehicle battery by driving continuously for a while or by using a charging device.

The warning message will disappear after the engine has been started twice without a voltage drop. If the vehicle battery cannot be recharged, have the cause of the fault remedied by a dealer.

Vehicle Personalisation

The behaviour of some vehicle functions can be personalised by changing settings in the Infotainment system.

Some of the personal settings for different drivers can be memorised individually for each vehicle key.

See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *9*.

Note

- Depending on vehicle model and options, some functions described below may not be available.
- Some functions are only displayed or active when the engine is running.

Press ⌂, select ✿ **Settings** and then the **Vehicle** tab on the touch-screen.

Note

For a description of other Settings menu items see *Settings* ⇨ *137*.

In the corresponding submenus the following settings can be changed.

Climate and Air Quality

- **Auto Fan Speed** : Modifies the cabin airflow level of the climate control system in automatic mode.

- **Auto Demist** : Supports windscreen dehumidification by automatically selecting the necessary settings and automatic air conditioning mode.
- **Auto Rear Demist** : Automatically activates the heated rear window.

Collision / Detection Systems

- **Forward Collision System** : Activates or deactivates and changes the settings of the forward collision system.
- **Adaptive Cruise Go Notifier** : Activates or deactivates the reminder function of the adaptive cruise control.
- **Side Blind Spot Alert** : Activates or deactivates the side blind spot alert.
- **Park Assist** : Activates or deactivates the ultrasonic parking assist. Activation is selectable with or without a towbar.
- **Rear Camera Park Assist Symbols** : Activates or deactivates the parking assist symbols displayed on the camera view when an object is detected.

Comfort and Convenience

- **Chime Volume** : Changes the volume of warning chimes.
- **Personalisation by Driver** : Activates or deactivates the personalisation function.
- **Rain Sense Wipers** : Activates or deactivates automatic wiping with the rain sensor. When off and the wiper switch is in the Auto position, the wipers operate as manual intermittent wipers.
- **Auto Wipe in Reverse Gear** : Activates or deactivates automatic operation of the rear window wiper when reverse gear is engaged and the front wipers are on.

Lighting

- **Vehicle Locator Lights** : Activates or deactivates the entry lighting.
- **Exit Lighting** : Activates or deactivates and changes the duration of lighting when leaving the vehicle at night.

Power Door Locks

- **Open Door Anti-Lock Out** : When on, prevents the vehicle from being locked while a door is open.
- **Auto Door Lock** : Activates or deactivates the automatic door locking function when the vehicle is shifted out of Park or when the vehicle starts.

Remote Lock, Unlock and Start

- **Remote Unlock Light Feedback** : Activates or deactivates the exterior light feedback whilst unlocking.
- **Remote Lock Feedback** : Changes what kind of feedback is given when locking the vehicle.

- **Remote Door Unlock** : Changes the configuration to unlock only the driver's door or the entire vehicle whilst unlocking with the RKE transmitter buttons.
- **Relock Doors Unlocked Remotely** : Activates or deactivates the automatic relock function after unlocking without opening the vehicle.
- **Remote Start Auto Heat Seats** : Activates or deactivates automatic operation of the heated seats when using the remote start function.
- **Passive Door Unlock** : Changes the configuration to unlock only the driver's door or the entire vehicle whilst unlocking, or disable the keyless entry function.
- **Passive Door Lock** : Activates or deactivates the passive locking function. This feature locks the vehicle automatically after several seconds if all doors have been closed and a RKE transmitter has been removed from the vehicle.
- **Remote Left in Vehicle Alert** : Activates or deactivates the warning chime when the RKE transmitter remains in the vehicle.

Lighting

Exterior Lighting
Exterior Lamp Controls 90
Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer 91
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 91
Automatic Headlamp System 91
Headlamp Leveling Control 92
Hazard Warning Flashers 92
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 93
Rear Fog Lights 93
Reverse Lamps 94
Misted Light Covers 94

Interior Lighting
Instrument Panel Illumination Control 94
Interior Lamps 95
Reading Lamps 95
Sun Visor Lamps 96

Lighting Features
Centre Console Lighting 96
Entry Lighting 96
Exit Lighting 97
Battery Power Protection 97

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lamp Controls

Turn the light switch:

AUTO : Automatic light control; switches automatically between daytime running lights and headlamps. See *Automatic Headlamp System* ⇨ *91*.

: Park, tail and rear number plate lamps.

: Headlamps and all park lamps.

Automatic light control is active when the ignition is on.

Headlamp High/ Low-Beam Changer

Push the turn signal lever to change from low to high beam.

Pull the lever to deactivate high beam.

High beam is indicated by ≣● on the instrument cluster.

Headlamp Flash

To activate the headlamp flash, pull the turn signal lever and release. The headlamps will remain on for as long as the lever is pulled.

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) increase visibility of the vehicle during daylight.

When the automatic light control switch is in the **AUTO** position, the DRL are switched on automatically during the daytime when the engine is running. The system switches between daytime running lamps and headlamps automatically, depending on the lighting conditions.

Automatic Headlamp System

When the automatic light control function is turned on (AUTO) and the engine is running, the system switches between daytime running lamps and headlamps automatically. Operation depends on the external lighting conditions and information from the wiper system.

Automatic Headlamp Activation

During poor lighting conditions, the headlamps are switched on. Additionally, the headlights are switched on if the windscreen wipers have been activated for several wipes.

A sensor mounted in the front-centre of the instrument panel detects ambient lighting conditions. Do not cover the sensor, otherwise the headlamps may not operate correctly.

⚠ Warning

The automatic headlamp sensor cannot replace the driver's personal judgement of the prevailing light conditions. For example, the sensor is unable to detect foggy conditions.

In situations such as this, set the lamp switch to ≡D, otherwise your safety and that of other road users could be endangered.

Tunnel Detection

When a tunnel is entered, the headlamps are switched on immediately until lighting conditions return to normal.

Headlamp Leveling Control

If equipped, the headlamp beam level can be adjusted according to vehicle load and to prevent glare to oncoming drivers.

Turn ≡D to the desired position.

0 : Front seats occupied.

1 : All seats occupied.

2 : All seats occupied and load compartment laden.

3 : Driver's seat occupied and load compartment laden.

Hazard Warning Flashers

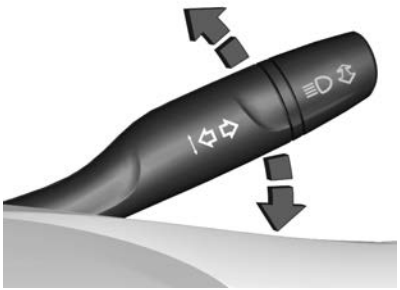
Operated by pressing ⚠.

Note

Depending on model, the hazard warning switch may be on the right or left of the infotainment system controls.

In the event of an accident with airbag deployment, the hazard warning flashers are activated automatically.

Turn and Lane-Change Signals



Lever up : Left turn signal

Lever down : Right turn signal

A resistance point can be felt when moving the turn signal lever. Constant flashing is activated when the lever is moved beyond the resistance point.

It is deactivated when the steering wheel is turned in the opposite direction, or the lever is manually returned to the neutral position.

Temporary flashing is activated by holding the lever just before the resistance point. The turn signal lights will flash until the lever is released.

To activate three flashes automatically, tap the lever briefly without passing the resistance point. If a trailer is connected, the turn signal lights flash six times and tone frequency changes.

Rear Fog Lights

The vehicle has one rear fog lamp.

Operated by pressing .

When the light control switch is in the AUTO position, turning on the rear fog lamp will turn the headlamps on automatically.

The rear fog lamp should only be used in very bad visibility conditions such as fog, snow or heavy rain.

Reverse Lamps

The reverse lamps Illuminate when the ignition is on and reverse gear is selected.

Misted Light Covers

The inside of a light housing may mist-up briefly in poor, wet and cold weather conditions, in heavy rain or after washing. The mist disappears quickly by itself. To help, switch on the headlights.

Interior Lighting

Instrument Panel Illumination Control

Brightness of the following lights can be adjusted.

They illuminate when the light control switch is in the AUTO position and the light sensor detects night conditions, or in ≡D or ≡D positions.

- Instrument panel illumination
- Infotainment display
- Illuminated switches and operation elements

Turn and hold ☼ until the desired brightness is obtained.

Interior Lamps

During entry and exit of the vehicle, the front and rear courtesy lights automatically turn on and then off after a delay.

Note

In the event of an accident with airbag deployment, the courtesy lights are turned on automatically.

Front Courtesy Light

: Automatic turning on and off when a door is opened or closed.

: Press to turn the interior lights on manually.

: Press to turn the interior lights off manually.

Rear Courtesy Lights

Illuminate in conjunction with the front courtesy light.

Reading Lamps

Front

Rear

The front and rear reading lights are operated by pressing or in the courtesy light.

Sun Visor Lamps

If equipped, illuminates when the cover is opened.

Lighting Features

Centre Console Lighting

A spotlight incorporated in the front interior lights illuminates when the headlights are turned on.

Entry Lighting

Depending on vehicle model, the following lights are turned on for a short time when unlocking the vehicle with the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter:

- Headlights.
- Tail lamps.
- Number plate lights.
- Instrument panel lights.
- Interior lights.

Some functions are only operable when it is dark outside to facilitate locating the vehicle.

The lighting turns off immediately when the ignition is turned on.

This function can be activated or deactivated. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *87*.

The settings can be saved for the RKE transmitter being used. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *9*.

The following lights will additionally switch on when the driver's door is opened:

- Illumination of some switches.
- Driver information centre.

Exit Lighting

Depending on vehicle model, the following lights will turn on when the ignition is turned off:

- Interior lights.
- Instrument panel lights.

They will switch off automatically after a delay. This function works only in the dark.

Interior lighting is activated if the driver's door is opened during this time.

Path Lighting

Headlights, tail lamps and number plate lights illuminate the surrounding area for an adjustable time after leaving the vehicle.

Activation

Path lighting is activated, when the ignition is turned off and the driver's door is opened.

If the driver's door is not closed, the path lights turn off after two minutes.

Path lighting can be activated, deactivated or the duration can be changed. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *87*.

The settings can be saved for the RKE transmitter being used. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *9*.

Battery Power Protection

This function guarantees longest vehicle battery life via an alternator with controllable power output and optimised power distribution.

To prevent discharge of the vehicle battery when driving, the following systems are reduced automatically in two stages and finally switched off:

- Heated rear window.
- Heated mirrors.
- Heated seats.
- Fan.

In the second stage, a message confirming the activation of the vehicle battery discharge protection will be displayed in the driver information centre.

Automatic Lights Off

To prevent discharge of the vehicle's battery when the ignition is off, some interior lights are turned off automatically after a period of time.

Infotainment System

Introduction
Overview 98
Steering Wheel Controls 100
Using the System 102
Software Updates 105

Radio
AM-FM-DAB Radio 105
Radio Data System (RDS) 107
Radio Reception 108
Multi-Band Antenna 108

Audio Players
Avoiding Untrusted Media Devices 109
USB Port 109
Auxiliary Jack 112
Bluetooth Audio 113

Navigation
Using the Navigation System 115
Maps 116
Navigation Symbols 117
Destination 118
Global Positioning System (GPS) 123
Vehicle Positioning 123
Problems with Route Guidance 124
If the System Needs Service 124
Map Data Updates 124
Database Coverage Explanations 124

Voice Recognition
Voice Recognition 125

Phone
Bluetooth 130
Apple CarPlay and Android Auto 136

Settings
Settings 137

Trademarks and Licence Agreements
Trademarks and Licence Agreements 142

Introduction

Overview

Read the following pages to become familiar with the infotainment system features.

Note

This section describes all available configurations, therefore some features described may not be fitted to your vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

The infotainment system has built-in features intended to help avoid distraction by disabling some features when driving. These features may grey out when they are unavailable. Many infotainment features are also available through the instrument cluster and steering wheel controls.

Before driving:

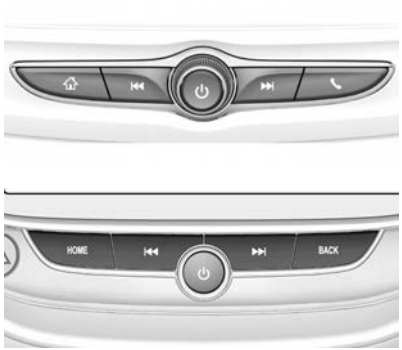
- Become familiar with the system operation and infotainment display and controls.
- Set up the audio by pre-setting favourite stations, setting the tone, and adjusting the speakers.
- Set up mobile phones and contacts in advance so they can be called easily by pressing a single control or by using a single voice command.

Infotainment System

The infotainment system is controlled by directly using the infotainment display, with the steering wheel controls, voice recognition or with the controls on the instrument panel under the infotainment display. Also see *Using the System* ⇨ *102*, *Steering Wheel Controls* ⇨ *100*, *Voice Recognition* ⇨ *125*.

Control Panel

Two control panels are available depending on model.



⌂ **/ HOME :** Press to go to the Home Page. See “Home Page” later in this section.

⏮ **:** Radio: Press and release to go to the previous station. Press and hold to fast seek the next strongest previous station. See *AM-FM-DAB Radio* ⇨ *105*.

USB/Bluetooth: Press to seek to the beginning of the current or previous track. Press and hold to quickly reverse through a track. Release to return to playing speed. See *USB Port* ⇨ *109* or *Bluetooth Audio* ⇨ *113*.

⏻ **:** Press to turn the power on.

Press and hold to turn the power off.

Press to mute/unmute the system when on.

Turn to decrease or increase the volume.

When the power is on and the system is not muted, a quick status pane will display when ⏻ is pressed. Pressing ⏻ will mute the system and trigger this pane to show. A long press is required to actually power down the system.

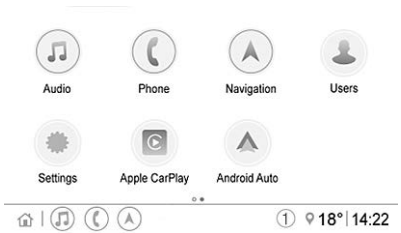
⏭ : Radio: Press and release to go to the next station. Press and hold to fast seek the next track or strongest station.

USB/Bluetooth: Press to seek the next track. Press and hold to fast forward through a track. Release to return to playing speed. See *USB Port* ⇨ *109* or *Bluetooth Audio* ⇨ *113*.

📞 : Press to access the Phone menu.

BACK : Return to the previous screen or menu.

Home Page



The Home Page is where vehicle application icons are accessed. Some applications may be disabled when the vehicle is moving.

Note

Application icons vary depending on vehicle model and equipment.

Swipe left or right across the screen to access the pages. See "Infotainment Gestures" in *Using the System* ⇨ *102*.

Managing Home Page Icons

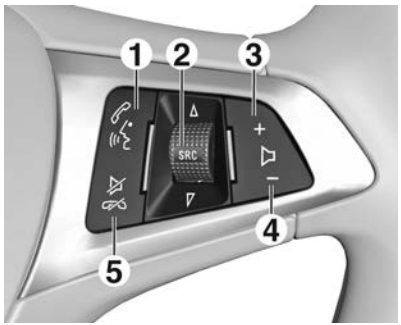
The Home page icons can be moved or deleted as desired.

1. Touch and hold any of the Home Page icons to enter edit mode.
2. Continue holding the icon and drag it to the desired position.
3. Release your finger to drop the icon in the desired position.
4. To move an application to another page, drag the icon to the edge of the display toward the desired page.
5. Continue dragging and dropping application icons as desired.

Steering Wheel Controls

The following controls are available on the steering wheel.

Type 1



1. Call 📞:
   - When there is no connected Bluetooth device on the Infotainment system: Executes the Bluetooth device connection.

- When there is a connected Bluetooth device on the Infotainment system: Press to answer the call or enter the redial selection mode.

  If the connected phone supports Speech Recognition, press and hold to activate the phone's speech recognition mode.

2. SRC (Source):

   Press to change the source, e.g. AM, FM, USB, etc.

   Rotate (▲ / ▼) to select the next or previous:

   - Radio mode: preset radio station.
   - Audio mode: track / chapter / picture.
   - Phone mode: call list entry when the call list is open.

3. Volume + :

   Press **+** to increase the volume.

4. Volume – :

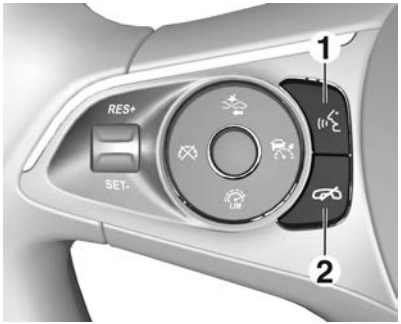
   Press **-** to decrease the volume.

5. Mute/Hang up :

   Press in any music play mode to turn the mute function on and off.

   Press to reject incoming calls, or to finish your current call, or to end speech recognition mode.

Type 2

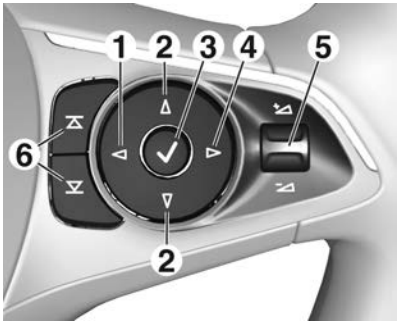


1. Call :

   - Press to take a phone call, activate speech recognition or interrupt a voice prompt.
   - When there is a connected Bluetooth device on the Infotainment system: Press to answer the call or enter the redial selection mode.

     Press and hold to activate the phone's voice pass-thru if supported by the phone.

2. End : Press to end or decline an incoming call, end speech recognition or activate/deactivate the Mute function.



1. ◁: Press to open the Driver Information Centre (DIC) main menu page.
2. ▽ or △:
   - Press to scroll through the DIC menu items.
   - Press and hold to fast scroll through long lists in the DIC, e.g. contacts.
3. ✓: Confirm a selection of a DIC item.
4. ▷: If available, press to open a sub-page of the selected item in the DIC.
5. ◿ + / –: Press towards + to increase volume or towards – to decrease volume.
6. ⧊ or ⧋:
   - Radio: press to select the next/previous favourite station in the DIC.
   - Media: press to select the next/previous track in the DIC.

Using the System

Audio

Touch the Audio icon to display the active audio source page. Examples of available sources are AM, FM, DAB (if equipped), USB, and Bluetooth.

Phone

Touch the Phone icon to display the phone main page. See *Bluetooth* ⇨ *130*.

Navigation

If equipped, touch the Navigation icon to display the navigation map. See *Using the Navigation System* ⇨ *115*.

Users

If equipped, touch the Users icon to sign in or create a new user profile and follow the on-screen instructions.

Several user profiles can be active at one time in the vehicle. It may be necessary to remove a profile from the menu before creating or signing into an existing profile. The removed profile can be logged into at a later time. See “Personal” under *Settings* ⇨ *137*.

Settings

Touch the Settings icon to display the Settings menu. See *Settings* ⇨ *137*.

Apple CarPlay

Touch the Apple CarPlay icon to activate Apple CarPlay after a supported device is connected. See *Apple CarPlay and Android Auto* ⇨ *136*.

Android Auto

Touch the Android Auto icon to activate Android Auto after a supported device is connected. See *Apple CarPlay and Android Auto* ⇨ *136*.

Shortcut Tray

The shortcut tray is near the bottom of the display. It can show up to four applications.

Notifications

When a device is connected, e.g. via USB or the navigation system SD Card, a notification icon ○ containing a number reflecting the devices connected is displayed in the shortcut tray. Touch the icon to display an information screen and eject the device.

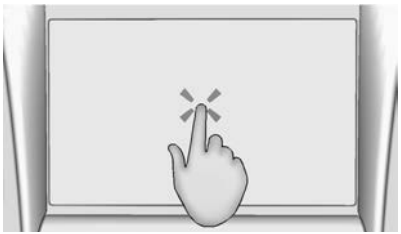
Infotainment Display Features

Infotainment display features show on the display when available. When a feature is unavailable, it may grey out. When a feature is selected, it may highlight.

Infotainment Gestures

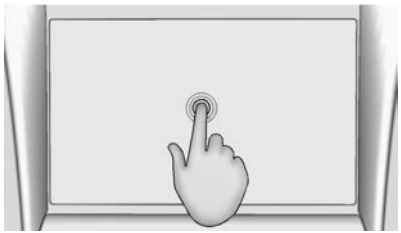
Use the following finger gestures to control the infotainment system.

Touch/Tap



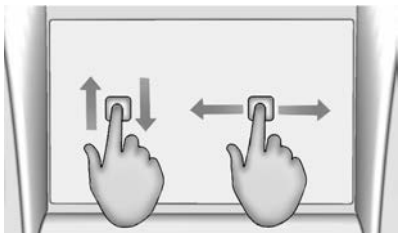
Touch/Tap is used to select an icon or option, activate an application, or change the location inside a map.

Touch and Hold



Touch and hold can be used to start another gesture, or to move or delete an application.

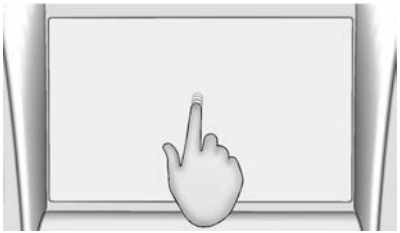
Drag



Drag is used to move applications on the Home Page, or to pan the map. To drag the item, it must be held and moved along the display to the new location. This can be done

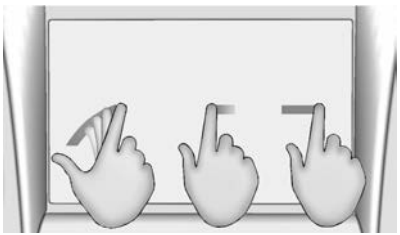
up, down, right, or left. This feature is only available when vehicle is parked and not in motion.

Nudge



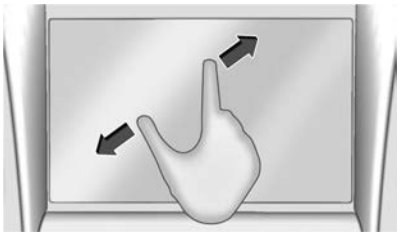
Nudge is used to move items a short distance on a list or a map. To nudge, hold and move the selected item up or down to a new location.

Fling or Swipe



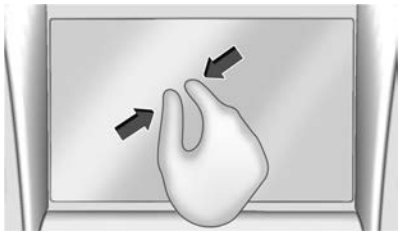
Fling or swipe is used to scroll through a list, pan the map, or change page views. Do this by placing a finger on the infotainment display then moving it rapidly up and down or right and left.

Spread



Spread is used to zoom in on a map, certain images, or a web page. Place finger and thumb together on the display, then move them apart.

Pinch



Pinch is used to zoom out on a map, certain images, or a web page. Place finger and thumb apart on the display, then move them together.

Cleaning High Gloss Surfaces and Displays

For vehicles with high gloss surfaces or vehicle displays, use a microfibre cloth to wipe surfaces. Before wiping the surface with the microfibre cloth, use a soft bristle brush to remove dirt that could scratch the surface. Then use the microfibre cloth by gently rubbing to clean. Never use window cleaners or solvents. Periodically hand wash the microfibre cloth separately,

using mild soap. Do not use bleach or fabric softener. Rinse thoroughly and air dry before next use.

Software Updates

See your dealer for information about software updates.

Radio

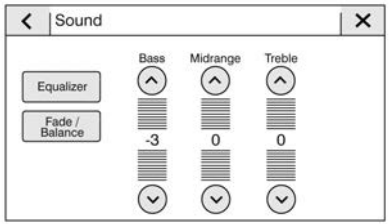
AM-FM-DAB Radio

Playing the Radio

From the Home Page, touch the Audio icon to display the active audio source page. Choose from the three most recently used sources listed at the left side of the display or, depending on model, touch **More** ⟩ or ⌄ (More) to display a list of available sources. Examples of available sources are: AM, FM, DAB (if equipped), USB, and Bluetooth.

Infotainment System Sound Menu

From any of the audio source main pages, touch ⫲ (Sound) to display the following:



Equaliser : Touch to adjust Bass, Midrange and Treble using the controls on the infotainment display.

Fade/Balance : Touch to adjust by using the controls on the infotainment display or by tapping/ dragging the crosshair on the display.

Finding a Station

Seeking a Station

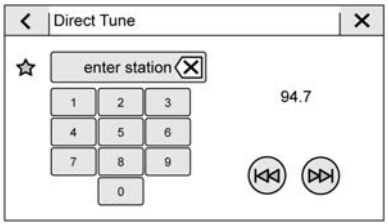
From the AM, FM, or DAB option, press ⏮ or ⏭ on the instrument panel to search for the previous or next strong station.

Browsing Stations

From the AM, FM, or DAB display, touch (Browse) on the infotainment display to list all available stations. Navigate up and down through all stations by scrolling the list. Touch the station that you want to listen to. Touch ☆ to save the station as a favourite.

If equipped, touch Update Station List to update the active stations in your area.

Direct Tune



Access Direct Tune by touching (Tune) on the infotainment display to source AM, FM, or DAB and bring up the keypad. Navigate up and down through all frequencies using the arrows on the right side of the display. Directly enter a station using the keypad. When a new station is entered, the information about that station displays on the right side. This information will update with each new valid frequency. Touch ☆ to save the station as a favourite.

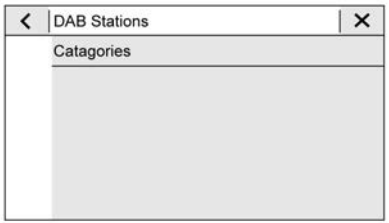
The keypad will grey out entries that do not contribute to a valid frequency and will automatically place a decimal point within the frequency number.

Touch (X) to delete one number at a time. Touch and hold (X) to delete all numbers.

A valid AM, FM, DAB station will automatically tune to the new frequency but not close the Direct Tune display. Touch the Back icon on the infotainment display or ✕ to exit out of Direct Tune.

The tune arrows on the right side of the Direct Tune display tune through the complete station list one station step at a time per touch. A touch and hold advances through stations quickly.

Categories



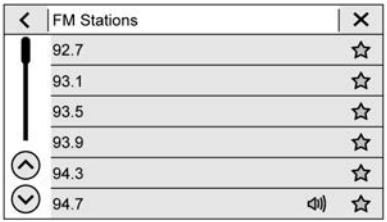
If equipped, categories displays a list of the available radio stations sorted into their type; e.g. Pop, Classic, Information, etc.

Touch Categories at the top of the Browse menu and then touch a category name to display a list of stations available in that category. Touching a station will tune the radio to that station.

Storing Radio Station Favourites

Favourites are displayed in the area at the top of the display.

Touch and hold a preset to store the current station as a favourite. Touch a saved favourite to recall a favourite station.



Favourites can also be stored by touching ☆ in a station list. This will highlight indicating that it is now stored as a favourite.

The number of favourites displayed is automatically adjusted by default, but can be manually adjusted in Settings in the System tab under Favourites and then Set Number of Audio Favourites. It can also be adjusted in Settings in the Apps tab under Audio and then Set Number of Audio Favourites.

Note

When a favourite DAB station is out of range, it will be greyed out in the favourites area. The station can be selected, but reception will not be received until the vehicle is within range.

Radio Data System (RDS)

The audio system has an RDS. RDS features are available for use with FM and DAB stations that broadcast RDS information. With RDS, the radio can:

- Seek to stations broadcasting the selected type of programming
- Display messages from radio stations, e.g. weather, etc.

This system relies on receiving specific information from these stations and only works when the information is available. In rare cases, a radio station may broadcast incorrect information that causes the radio features to work improperly. If this happens, contact the radio station.

When information is broadcast from the current station, the station name or call letters display on the audio screen.

When RDS signal information has been detected, the fields will be updated on the display to show the RDS data. The radio text will be updated any time new information is received.

The RDS fields on the display will show in the order of:

- Frequency and /or RDS-PSN.
- RDS text line one is the information provided by the broadcast.
- RDS text line two and three is RDS text. Line three is used only if necessary, to wrap over from the text on line two.

If the RDS text information overflows from line two and three, the previous information given on line two and three will clear. The overflow of information will finish starting from the previously used line two and then if necessary, line three.

If an RDS text update occurs during the paging, the display fields are cleared and the new information is displayed, beginning on line two.

RDS can be turned off, see *Settings* ⇨ *137*.

Radio Reception

Unplug electronic devices from the accessory power outlets if there is interference or static in the radio.

FM

FM signals only reach about 16 to 65 km. Although the radio has a built-in electronic circuit that automatically works to reduce interference, some static can occur, especially around tall buildings or hills, causing the sound to fade in and out. When this happens, try reducing the treble on the radio.

FM RDS information may not be available during weak signal conditions.

AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. Static can also occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception.

Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB)

Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) is a universal broadcast system that indicates stations by the radio program name on the infotainment display. The DAB signal produces a constant volume and is not affected by interference from nearby frequencies. The reception quality of DAB is better than FM around natural obstacles or buildings. If the DAB signal is poor, you may experience a loss of audio.

Mobile Device Usage

Mobile device usage, such as making or receiving calls, charging, or just having the mobile device on may cause static interference in the radio. Unplug the mobile device or turn it off if this happens.

Multi-Band Antenna

Depending on vehicle model:

- The AM-FM-DAB antenna is embedded in the rear window glass.

Note

The application of after-market window tinting with metallic film can interfere or distort the incoming radio signal. Speak to a window tinting specialist before applying any film.

- The roof antenna is used for AM-FM-DAB reception and GPS (Global Positioning System).

Note

Keep away from obstructions for clear reception. If the vehicle has a sunroof, and it is open, reception can also be affected.

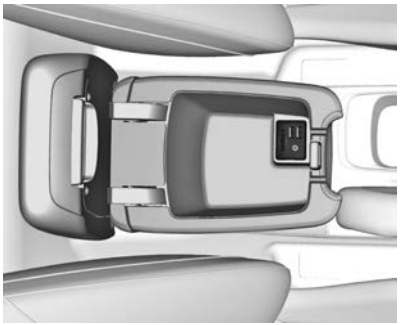
Audio Players

Avoiding Untrusted Media Devices

When using media devices such as USB or mobile devices, consider the source. Untrusted media devices could contain files that affect system operation or performance. Avoid use if the content or origin cannot be trusted.

USB Port

Audio stored on a USB device may be listened to.



Depending on model, a single USB port is located at the rear of the centre console, or a dual USB port is located in the console armrest storage.

These USB ports can be used for charging devices and also include a data connection to the infotainment system.

Note

Vehicles with navigation system: An SD card slot is provided for navigation map cards. Do not remove the SD card or use the card slot for any other purpose.

Playing from a USB

A USB mass storage device can be connected to the USB port.

Audio extensions supported by the USB may include:

- FLAC
- MP3
- AAC
- OGG
- 3GP

Gracenote

When plugging in a USB device, Gracenote service builds voice tags for music. Voice tags allow artists, albums with hard to pronounce names, and nicknames to be used to play music through voice recognition.

While indexing, infotainment features are available.

My Media Library

MyMedia is only available when two or more indexed devices are connected. It allows access to content from all indexed media sources. MyMedia will show as an available source in the Source page.

USB MP3 Player and USB Devices

The USB MP3 players and USB devices connected must comply with the USB Mass Storage Class specification (USB MSC).

To play a USB device:

1. Connect the USB.
2. Touch the Audio icon from the Home Page.
3. Depending on model, touch **More** ⟫ or ⌄ (More) to display a list of available sources and then touch the USB device.

Use the following when playing an active USB source:

▷ **:** Touch to play the current media source.

II : Touch to pause playback of the current media source.

⏮ **:**

- Touch to seek to the beginning of the current or previous track.
- Touch and hold to reverse quickly through playback. Release to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

⏭ **:**

- Touch to seek to the next track.
- Touch and hold to advance quickly through playback. Release to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

: Touch the shuffle icon to play music in random order.

USB Sound Menu

Touch . See “Infotainment System Sound Menu” under *AM-FM-DAB Radio ⇨ 105*.

USB Browse Menu

Touch When a list of songs, albums, artists, or other types of media displays, the up and down arrows, and A-Z appear on the left side. Select A-Z to view a display that will show all letters of the alphabet and touch the letter to go to.

Touch the up or down arrow to move the list up and down.

The following may display:

Playlists

1. Touch to view the playlists stored on the USB.
2. Touch a playlist to view the list of all songs in that playlist.
3. Touch a song from the list to begin playback.

Examples of supported Playlist extensions are m3u and pls.

Artists

1. Touch to view the list of artists stored on the USB.
2. Touch an artist name to view a list of all albums by the artist.
3. To select a song, touch All Songs or touch an album and then touch a song from the list.

Songs

1. Touch to display a list of all songs on the USB.

2. To begin playback, touch a song from the list.

Albums

1. Touch to view the albums on the USB.
2. Touch the album to view a list of all songs on the album.
3. Touch a song from the list to begin playback.

Genres

1. Touch to view the genres on the USB.
2. Touch a genre to view a list of artists.
3. Touch an artist to view albums by that artist.
4. Touch an album to view songs on the album.
5. Touch a song to start playback.

iTunes Radio

Touch to view iTunes Radio on the iPhone to get a list of stations.

Compilations

Touch to view the Compilations on the USB.

Composers:

1. Touch to view the composers on the USB.
2. Touch a Composer to view a list of albums by that composer.
3. Touch an album or All Songs to view a list of songs.
4. Touch a song from the list to begin playback.

Folders:

1. Touch to view the directories on the USB.
2. Touch a folder to view a list of all files.
3. Touch a file from the list to begin playback.

Podcasts : Touch to view the podcasts on the connected Apple device and get a list of podcast episodes.

Audiobooks:

1. Touch to view the audiobooks stored on the Apple device.
2. Touch an audiobook to get a list of chapters.
3. Touch the chapter from the list to begin playback.

File System and Naming

Examples of file systems supported by the USB may include:

- FAT32
- NTFS
- HFS+

The songs, artists, albums, and genres are taken from the file's song information and are only displayed if present. The radio displays the file name as the track name if the song information is not available.

Supported Apple Devices

To view supported devices, see your dealer.

Storing and Recalling Media Favourites

If supported, to store media favourites touch on the infotainment display to show a list of media types.

Select from one of the following Browse options to save a favourite:

Playlists : Touch ☆ next to any playlist to store the playlist as a favourite. Touch a saved favourite to recall a favourite playlist. The first song in the playlist begins to play.

Artists : Touch ☆ next to any artist to store the artist as a favourite. Touch a saved favourite to recall a favourite artist. The first song in the artist list begins to play.

Songs : Touch ☆ next to any song to store the song as a favourite. Touch a saved favourite to recall a favourite song.

Albums : Touch ☆ next to any album to store the album as a favourite. Touch a saved favourite to recall a favourite album. The first song in the album list begins to play.

Genres : Touch ☆ next to any genre to store the genre as a favourite. Touch a saved favourite to recall a favourite genre. The first song of the genre begins to play.

Podcasts : Touch ☆ next to any podcast to store the podcast as a favourite. Touch a saved favourite to recall a favourite podcast. The podcast begins to play.

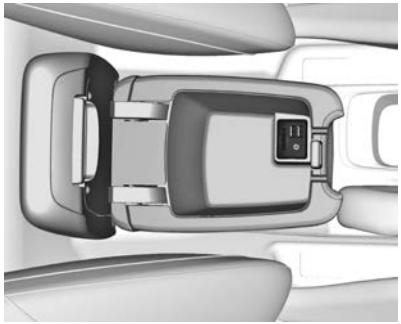
Audiobooks : Touch ☆ next to any audiobook to store the audiobook as a favourite. Touch a saved favourite to recall a favourite audiobook. The first chapter in the audiobook begins to play.

Media Playback and Mute

USB playback will be paused if the system is muted. If the steering wheel mute control is pressed again, playback will resume.

If the source is changed while in mute, playback resumes and audio will unmute.

Auxiliary Jack



The vehicle has an auxiliary input jack located below the console armrest. Possible auxiliary audio sources include:

- Laptop computer
- Audio music player/smart phone

This jack is not an audio output. Do not plug headphones into the auxiliary input jack.

Connect and control an auxiliary device while the vehicle is in P (Park).

Connect a 3.5 mm cable from the auxiliary device to the auxiliary input jack. When a device is connected, the system can play audio from the device over the vehicle speakers.

If an auxiliary device has already been connected, but a different source is currently active, depending on model, touch **More** 》 or ﹀ (More) to display a list of available sources, then touch AUX.

Shuffle and Browse are not available in the AUX source menu.

Bluetooth Audio

Music may be played from a paired Bluetooth device. For details on pairing a device, see *Bluetooth* ⇨ *130*

Volume and song selection may be controlled by using the infotainment controls or the mobile device.
If Bluetooth is selected and no volume is present, check the volume setting on both your mobile device and the infotainment system.

Music can be launched by touching Bluetooth from the recent sources list on the left of the display or, depending on model, touch **More** 》 or ﹀ (More) to display a list of available sources, then touching the Bluetooth device.

To play music via Bluetooth:

1. Turn on the device, and pair to connect the device.
2. Once paired, touch the Audio icon from the Home Page, then touch Bluetooth from the recent sources list on the left of the display.

Bluetooth Sound Menu

Touch ⫶. See “Infotainment System Sound Menu” under *AM-FM-DAB Radio* ⇨ *105*.

Bluetooth Browse Menu

Touch ⌕≡ When a list of songs, albums, artists, or other types of media displays, the up and down arrows, and A-Z appear on the left side. Select A-Z to view a display that will show all letters of the alphabet and touch the letter to go to.

Touch the up or down arrow to move the list up and down.

The following may display:

Playlists

1. Touch to view the playlists stored on the USB.
2. Touch a playlist to view the list of all songs in that playlist.
3. Touch a song from the list to begin playback.

Artists

1. Touch to view the list of artists stored on the USB.
2. Touch an artist name to view a list of all albums by the artist.
3. To select a song, touch All Songs or touch an album and then touch a song from the list.

Songs

1. Touch to display a list of all songs on the USB.
2. To begin playback, touch a song from the list.

Albums

1. Touch to view the albums on the USB.
2. Touch the album to view a list of all songs on the album.
3. Touch a song from the list to begin playback.

Genres

1. Touch to view the genres on the USB.
2. Touch a genre to view a list of artists.
3. Touch an artist to view albums by that artist.
4. Touch an album to view songs on the album.
5. Touch a song to start playback.

iTunes Radio

Touch to view iTunes Radio on the iPhone to get a list of stations.

Compilations

Touch to view the Compilations on the USB.

Composers:

1. Touch to view the composers on the USB.
2. Touch a Composer to view a list of albums by that composer.
3. Touch an album or All Songs to view a list of songs.
4. Touch a song from the list to begin playback.

Folders:

1. Touch to view the directories on the USB.
2. Touch a folder to view a list of all files.
3. Touch a file from the list to begin playback.

Podcasts

Touch to view the podcasts on the connected Apple device and get a list of podcast episodes.

Audiobooks:

1. Touch to view the audiobooks stored on the Apple device.
2. Touch an audiobook to get a list of chapters.
3. Touch the chapter from the list to begin playback.

Manage Bluetooth Devices

From the Home Page:

1. Touch the Audio icon.
2. Touch ⌄ (More).
3. Touch Bluetooth.
4. Touch the Devices icon to add or manage devices.

When touching Bluetooth, the radio may not be able to launch the audio player on the connected device to start playing. When the vehicle is not moving, use the mobile device to begin playback.

All devices launch audio differently. When selecting Bluetooth as a source, the radio may show as paused on the display. Press play on the device or touch ▷ on the display to begin playback.

Browse functionality will be provided where supported by the Bluetooth device. This media content will not be part of the MyMedia source mode.

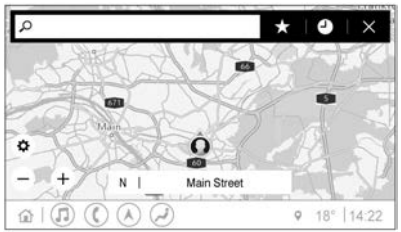
Some smart phones support sending Bluetooth music information to display on the radio. When the radio receives this information, it will check to see if any is available and display it. For more information about supported Bluetooth features, see your dealer or go to the owners section at www.holden.com.au

Navigation

Using the Navigation System

If equipped, launch the Navigation application by touching the Navigation ▲ icon on the Home Page or on the shortcut tray near the bottom of the infotainment display.

Navigation Map View



After opening the Navigation application for the first time, the application opens in full map view displaying the vehicle's current location. When the vehicle is stopped, the search bar may appear along the top of the navigation map view. Manually close the search bar by touching it and select ✕. When the vehicle is moving, the 🔍 (Search) icon will replace the search bar to maximise the full map view.

Set Up My Places

From the Navigation application, set up Home and Work addresses to enable one-touch navigation. To set up Home and Work addresses, touch ••• and select ⚙ (Settings). Choose Set Up My Places; Automatically show My Places on startup should be on by default. Select and enter Home and/or Work address and save.

Touch (current vehicle position). This symbol can also be used to set up Home and Work addresses by touching the pop-ups above it. Touch the pop-up message that appears. The message will automatically close after 15 seconds of inactivity.

To turn off the My Places pop-ups, switch Automatically show My Places on startup to Off.

If the vehicle's system is not signed into a customised profile, the current location icon uses a generic symbol. Once signed into a customised profile, the current location symbol will show a customised icon. See *Navigation Symbols* ⇨ *117*.

Touch the drive To Home or drive To Work pop-up to start either route. Only one will show if the vehicle is already at Home or Work.

Map and Navigation Settings

Touch ··· while in the map view to display options. The following may display:

- 3D Heading Up, 2D Heading Up, 2D North Up
- Show on Map
- Traffic Events (Greyed out due to feature not supported)
- Route Tracing (if a route has been saved)
- Settings
- Edit Destinations (if a route has been set)
- Avoid on Route (if a route has been set)

Touch ⚙ Settings to view Map and Navigation Settings. The following may display. To exit out of a list, touch ✕ in the top right corner to return to the main map view. Set up preferences before setting a destination and starting active guidance.

Set up My Places : Allows you to add default destinations such as Home and Work to enable one-touch navigation.

Map Preferences : Select the following features to be displayed or turned off: Map colours, 3D Landmarks, 3D Buildings, Show Terrain in 3D, Auto Zoom.

Route Preferences : Select the preferred route type and road features to avoid while on route.

Navigation Voice Control : Touch to access the voice control settings such as navigation volume and prompt level during a call. Volume can also be adjusted using the volume control or steering wheel volume switch while a voice prompt is playing.

Alert Preferences : Set alerts on or off during both inactive and active guidance views. Alerts include road safety, traffic camera and country town/village entry.

Manage History : Touch Manage History to access the History options such as recent destinations or searches.

About : Touch to display software information and version.

Maps

The Nav application requires a map database to run. It is stored on an SD card that is connected to the infotainment system. If the map database is not available, a missing SD card error message will be displayed.

SD Card Error Messages

The SD card only works for one unique vehicle. The SD card must pass authentication verification to be used for that specific vehicle. Potential error scenarios and messages include:

- The SD card has initialised for the first time: “Once initialised, this SD card can only be used for navigation in this vehicle.”
- The SD card is not working properly: “SD card is not functioning properly. (Error Code).”
- The SD card is not paired with the existing system: “This SD card is not valid in this vehicle for navigation. See Owner's Manual for more detail or visit your dealer. (Error Code).”
- The SD card has been removed from the slot: “SD card has been removed. (Error Code).”

Touch Continue to resume after the initialisation error message. For the other messages, touch OK to return to the Home Page.

Navigation Symbols

Following are the most common symbols that appear in the Nav application.

This indicates the vehicle's current location and direction on the map.

This is the vehicle's current location icon during inactive guidance mode. Once a user profile is created, the current location icon can be customised.

This icon indicates the vehicle's current location and direction on the map.

The destination pin marks the location of the final destination. Touch the pin to view the destination address or to add it or remove it from the Favourites list. Hide the information by touching the pin one more time. It will automatically time out if no action is taken.

Points of Interest (POIs) are places of interest for parking and petrol stations, etc.

The progress bar provides an overview of the route progress. As the route proceeds, the vehicle icon moves up the bar.

Touch the icon to zoom out on the map and view the entire route. Touch it again to return to the previous view.

View the drive time by touching the estimated time of arrival (ETA).

Current Location

When the vehicle is parked and not in a Navigation session, the user icon is centred on the map view, highlighting the current location.

Destination

Waypoints

Add up to five waypoints, which are additional destinations, along the route. To add an additional stop or waypoint:

- From active guidance, touch .
- Search for the destination using Voice search, or the Quick Category icons.
- Choose search results Along Route, Nearby, or Near Destination.
- Choose the desired waypoint and touch Add to Trip or replace the current destination by touching New Destination.

Route options are not available for waypoints.

Arriving at a Waypoint

When approaching a waypoint, the system will display a Destination Arrival view. To continue on to the next destination touch the Drive to message on the infotainment display.

If the vehicle passes the waypoint or gets out of the current route, the system will automatically reroute back to this waypoint. At the same time, it will show a Drive to icon along with the next waypoint address so the current waypoint can be skipped and guidance can resume to the next waypoint or destination.

Editing a Waypoint

When waypoints are added during active guidance, the system allows a stop to be deleted or the order to be changed. To edit a waypoint:

1. Touch ....
2. Touch Edit Destinations.
   - Modify destination order by touching and holding the arrow until it is highlighted. Drag to move the waypoint up or down the list.

- Delete a waypoint by touching 🗑. A pop-up will appear to confirm waypoint removal. Once the request is confirmed, the system will remove the address from the destinations list. Touch ✕ on the top right corner so the system can recalculate the route.

  If there is only one address in the destinations list, the system will disable the move and delete functions. The system will not allow the final destination to be deleted.

Map Information

Road network attributes are contained in the map database for map information. Attributes include information such as street names, street addresses, and turn restrictions. A detailed area includes all major highways, service roads, and residential roads. The detailed areas include Places of Interest (POIs) such as restaurants, airports, banks, hospitals, police stations, petrol stations, tourist attractions, and historical monuments.

The map database may not include data for newly constructed areas or map database corrections that are completed after production. The navigation system provides full route guidance in the detailed map areas. See *Maps* ⇨ *116*.

Zoom Control

The zoom control display is shown on the map view. A few ways to zoom in or out are:

- Touch + or – to zoom in or out on the map.
- Double tap with one finger to zoom in or single tap with two fingers to zoom out on the map.
- Use the index finger and thumb to zoom out by pinching and then zoom in by spreading those two fingers on the map.

Map Gestures and Map Scale

Use the following gestures on the infotainment display to adjust the map scale and display options.

- Pinch to zoom in or out.
- Pan the map.
- Use two fingers to tilt down and change from 2D to 3D. Tilt up to change back to 2D.
- Rotate the map.

See *Using the System* ⇨ *102*.

Mute

When in active guidance, the audio prompts while using navigation can be muted. Touch the speaker icon on the right side of the upper bar. A slash will appear on the speaker to indicate voice guidance is muted.

Active Guidance View

When a destination is chosen and a navigation session is active, the navigation system enters into an Active Guidance View (AGV).

Map Orientation

Touch ··· on the map to access map orientation settings. Map orientation is 3D Heading Up by default.

Available settings are:

- 3D Heading Up (Default): 3D map with the vehicle pointing up. In this mode, the current location icon will always head up and the map will rotate around it.
- 2D Heading Up: 2D map with the vehicle pointing up. In this mode, the current location icon will always head up and the map will rotate around it.
- 2D North Up: 2D map with North pointing up. In this mode, the current location icon will shift as the vehicle turns left and right.

Touch the icon to change the map type. The icon and label will also update accordingly.

Depending on the zoom level of the 2D Heading Up and 3D Heading Up maps, the system may automatically switch to the 2D North Up map.

When in AGV , the entire route can be viewed in 2D North Up by touching the traffic bar. The map will zoom out and readjust to display the full route. When in 2D North Up Route View, the Recentre icon will appear in the middle of the display. Touch either the Recentre icon or the traffic bar again to return to the previous view, either 2D or 3D.

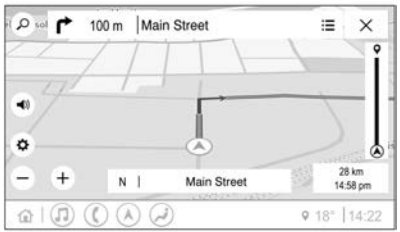
Lane Guidance

The map will display the lane information for the upcoming manoeuvre if it is available.

Junction View

When a vehicle is on the highway and approaching the exit, an image displays the lane that the vehicle must stay in to complete the next manoeuvre.

Quick-Turn View



When the vehicle is approaching a turn with the next turn following in quick succession, a quick-turn list appears below the primary turn indicator. An audio prompt will announce the quick turn.

Auto-Zoom

When approaching a manoeuvre, the map will automatically zoom in to show both the vehicle icon and the upcoming manoeuvre to give a better view of the manoeuvre. Once the manoeuvre is complete, the system will zoom back to the previous zoom level. Touch ··· on

the map to access Settings, then touch Map Configuration to access Auto-Zoom. This feature can be enabled or disabled.

Route List

Touch the menu option next to the next turn street name to display the Route List.

The Route List displays the turns and directions from the current location to the final destination.

Editing the Route List

The Route List can be edited by choosing EDIT, which expands the list to fill the display and enters the Edit Mode. While in Edit Mode, an unwanted route segment can be removed from the route by touching 🗑 next to the segment. A pop-up appears to confirm segment removal.

When the route segment has been removed, all segments are replaced by an activity indicator while the new route is recalculated. When the recalculation is complete, the activity indicator is replaced with the new route segments.

Highway Exit Lists

When displayed, touch the highway exit icon to open the Exit list. This icon displays next to the current street name near the bottom of the display. The icon only appears when on a highway with defined exits.

While travelling on roads with designated exits, an Exit list may be available. The Exit list displays the exit number, distance to the exit from the current vehicle position, and convenience stops that may be available, such as fuel, coffee, food, and lodging.

Next Manoeuvre Menu

When in Active Guidance, the Next manoeuvre Turn Arrow, Street Name, and manoeuvre Distance are shown in the Next manoeuvre at the top of the display overlaying the map. ETA, Distance to Destination, and Traffic Indicator are displayed in a panel pinned on the right of the display.

Navigation Next Turn Manoeuvre Alert

If the Navigation application is not open when a near manoeuvre prompt is given, it is shown as an alert. Touch the alert to go to the main navigation view or touch ✕ to dismiss the alert.

Repeat Voice Guidance

This symbol indicates the next guidance manoeuvre. Touch it to repeat the last spoken guidance instruction.

End Route

Touch Cancel at the top right corner to end active guidance and return to inactive guidance. If active guidance is cancelled before the destination has been reached, a pop-up option to Resume Trip will appear.

Resume Trip

The trip can be resumed if it was cancelled by touching the Resume Trip pop-up option.

If the system has determined that the destination has been reached, either because the arrival view displayed or the destination has been passed, the Resume Trip option will not appear.

Favourites

The navigation favourites can have contacts, addresses, or POIs that have been saved through the favourite icon on the details view.

Accessing Favourites

To manage favourites, touch the Search icon on the Home Page. Touch Favourites to access the Favourites option.

In the Navigation application, view the Favourites list by touching ☆ in the search bar along the top of the Navigation map view. If the search bar is closed, touch 🔍 and select ☆.

Saving Favourites

Favourites can be added from a number of the system's applications. Touch the favourites icon to save content as a favourite.

Renaming Navigation Favourites

1. Touch the Settings icon on the Home Page and touch the System tab.
2. Touch Favourites to access the Manage Favourites option.
3. Touch a saved Navigation favourite to access the edit icon. Touch the edit icon to rename the favourite.
4. Touch Save to store the renamed favourite.

Recents

Touch 🕒 to access a list of recent destinations.

Recentre Position Icon

Touch the Recentre Position arrow in the middle of the map view to reset the map to the current location.

Last Parked Location

The Last Parked Location is the last location the vehicle engine was turned off. That location is displayed in the first row of the Recents list. Touching the last Parked Location shows the Address Details view to either save the address or drive to it. The Last Parked Location can be deleted by entering the Edit display. Once the Last Parked Location is deleted, it no longer appears in the Recents list, unless the vehicle is started at that location again.

Show POI Icons

To see the POI categories, touch Options, then touch Show on Map. Up to eight categories of icons can be selected.

Search

Touch Search on the infotainment display to open the search display. It has a search field entry box, quick category icon shortcuts, recents icon, favourites icon, and keyboard.

Auto Complete

Enter a partial location in the field entry box on the search display. Auto complete will attempt to complete the destination based on what is being entered. Touch the suggested item to search.

Global Positioning System (GPS)

The position of the vehicle is determined by using satellite signals, various vehicle signals, and map data.

At times, other interference such as the satellite condition, road configuration, condition of the vehicle, and/or other circumstances can affect the navigation system's ability to determine the accurate position of the vehicle.

The GPS shows the current position of the vehicle using signals sent by GPS satellites. When the vehicle is not receiving signals from the satellites, a symbol appears in the status bar.

This system might not be available or interference can occur if any of the following are true:

- Signals are obstructed by tall buildings, trees, large trucks, or a tunnel.
- Satellites are being repaired or improved.

For more information if the GPS is not functioning properly, see *Problems with Route Guidance* ⇨ *124* and *If the System Needs Service* ⇨ *124*.

Vehicle Positioning

At times, the position of the vehicle on the map could be inaccurate due to one or more of the following reasons:

- The road system has changed.
- The vehicle is driving on slippery road surfaces such as sand, gravel, or snow.
- The vehicle is travelling on winding roads or long, straight roads.
- The vehicle is approaching a tall building or a large vehicle.
- The surface streets run parallel to a freeway.
- The vehicle has been transferred by a vehicle carrier or a ferry.
- The current position calibration is set incorrectly.
- The vehicle is travelling at high speed.
- The vehicle changes directions more than once, or the vehicle is turning on a turn table in a parking lot.
- The vehicle is entering and/or exiting a parking lot, garage, or a lot with a roof.
- The GPS signal is not received.
- A roof carrier is installed on the vehicle.
- Tyre chains are installed on the vehicle.
- The tyres are replaced or worn.
- The tyre pressure for the tyres is incorrect.

- This is the first navigation use after the map data is updated.
- The 12-volt battery has been disconnected for several days.
- The vehicle is driving in heavy traffic where driving is at low speeds, and the vehicle is stopped and started repeatedly.

Problems with Route Guidance

Inappropriate route guidance can occur under one or more of the following conditions:

- The turn was not made on the road indicated.
- Route guidance might not be available when using automatic rerouting for the next right or left turn.
- The route might not be changed when using automatic rerouting.
- There is no route guidance when turning at an intersection.
- Plural names of places might be announced occasionally.
- It could take a long time to operate automatic rerouting during high-speed driving.
- Automatic rerouting might display a route returning to the set waypoint if heading for a destination without passing through a set waypoint.
- The route prohibits the entry of a vehicle due to a regulation by time or season or any other regulation which may be given.
- Some routes might not be searched.
- The route to the destination might not be shown if there are new roads, if roads have recently changed, or if certain roads are not listed in the map data. See *Maps* ⇨ *116*.

To recalibrate the vehicle's position on the map, park with the vehicle running for two to five minutes, until the vehicle position updates. Make sure the vehicle is parked in a location that is safe and has a clear view of the sky and away from large obstructions.

If the System Needs Service

If the navigation system needs service and the steps listed here have been followed but there are still problems, see your dealer.

Map Data Updates

Map updates may be available after the time of purchase of your vehicle. To enquire about the availability of map updates and associated costs, contact your Holden dealer.

Database Coverage Explanations

Coverage areas vary with respect to the level of map detail available for any given area. Some areas feature greater levels of detail than others. If this happens, it does not mean there is a problem with the system. As the map data is updated, more detail can become available for areas that previously had limited detail. See *Map Data Updates* ⇨ *124*.

Voice Recognition

If equipped, voice recognition allows for hands-free operation within the navigation, audio, and mobile device applications. This feature can be started by pressing on the steering wheel, or by touching on the infotainment display within the navigation application when entering a destination.

However, not all features within these areas are supported by voice commands. Generally, only complex tasks that require multiple manual interactions to complete are supported by voice commands.

For example, tasks that take more than one or two touches, such as selecting a song or artist to play from a media device, would be supported by voice commands. Other tasks, like adjusting the volume or seeking up or down, are audio features that are easily performed by touching one or two options, and are not supported by voice commands.

In general there are flexible ways to speak commands for completing tasks.

Try stating a One-Shot command, such as “Directions to address <house number, street, city>”. Another example of a One-Shot Destination Entry command is, “Directions to Place of Interest at <hotel>”. If these commands do not work, try saying, “Take me to Place of Interest” or “Find address” and the system will walk you through by asking additional questions.

Using Voice Recognition

Voice recognition becomes available once the system has been initialised. This begins when the ignition is turned on. Initialisation may take a few moments.

1. Press on the steering wheel controls to activate voice recognition.
2. The audio system mutes and the system plays a prompt followed by a beep.
3. Wait until after the beep completes, then clearly speak one of the commands described in this section.

   A voice recognition system prompt can be interrupted while it is playing by pressing again.

   For example, if the prompt seems to be taking too long to finish, to speak the command without waiting for the prompt to complete, press again and wait for the beep.

There are three voice prompt modes supported:

- Informative verbal prompts: This type of prompt will provide more information regarding the supported actions.
- Short prompts: This type of prompt will provide simple instructions about what can be stated.
- Auto informative prompts: This type of prompt plays during the first few speech sessions, then

automatically switches to the short prompt after some experience has been gained through using the system.

These can be changed, see *Settings* ⇨ *137*. If a command is not spoken, the voice recognition system says a help prompt.

Prompts and Infotainment Displays

While a voice recognition session is active, there may be corresponding options showing on the displays. A selection can be made by manually touching the option, or by speaking the number for the option to select. Manual interaction in the voice recognition session is permitted. Interaction during a voice session may be completed entirely using voice commands while some manual commands may expedite a task. If a selection is made using a manual control, the voice recognition dialog will progress in the same way as if the selection were made using a voice command. Once the system completes the task, or the session is terminated, the voice recognition dialog stops.

An example of this type of manual intervention is touching an entry of a displayed number list instead of speaking the number associated with the entry desired.

Cancelling Voice Recognition

- Touch or say “Cancel” or “Exit” to terminate the voice recognition session and show the display where voice recognition was initiated.
- Press ☜ on the steering wheel controls to terminate the voice recognition session and show the display from where voice recognition was initiated.

Helpful Hints for Speaking Commands

Voice recognition can understand commands that are naturally stated in sentence form or direct commands that state the application and the task.

For best results:

- Listen for the prompt before saying a command or reply.
- Speak the command naturally, not too fast, not too slow.
- Use direct commands without a lot of extra words. For example, “Call <name> at work,” “Play” followed by the artist or song name, or “Tune” followed by the radio station number.
- Navigation destinations can be made in a single command using keywords. A few examples are: “I want directions to an address,” “I need to find a Place of Interest or (POI)” or “Find contact.”

  The system responds by requesting more details. For other POIs, say the name of a category like “Restaurants,” “Shopping Malls,” or “Hospitals.”

Direct commands might be more clearly understood by the system. An example of a direct command would be “Call <number>”. Examples of these direct commands

are shown on most of the displays while a voice session is active. If “Phone” or “Phone Commands,” is spoken, the system understands that a phone call is requested and will respond with questions until enough details are gathered to make a call.

If a mobile phone number has been saved with a name and a place, the direct command should include both, for example “Call <name> at work.”

Using Voice Recognition for List Options

When a list is displayed, a voice prompt will ask to confirm or select an option from that list.

When a display contains a list, there may be options that are available but not displayed. The list on a voice recognition screen functions the same as a list on other displays. Scrolling or flinging can be used to help display other entries from the list.

Manually scrolling or paging the list on a display during a voice recognition session suspends the current voice recognition event and plays the prompt “Please select manually or touch the Back icon on the infotainment display to try again.”

If manual selection takes more than 15 seconds, the session terminates and prompts that it has timed out. The display returns to the display where voice recognition was initiated.

The Back Command

Say “Back” or touch the Back icon on the infotainment display to go to the previous display.

If in voice recognition, and “Back” is spoken all the way back to the starting display, and then “Back” is spoken one more time, the voice recognition session will cancel.

Help

Say “Help” on any voice recognition display and the help prompt for the display is played.

Touching while the help prompt is playing will terminate the prompt and a beep will be heard. Doing this will stop the help prompt so that a voice command can be used.

Voice Recognition for the Radio

If browsing the audio sources when voice is touched, the voice recognition commands for AM, FM, and DAB are available.

“Switch to AM” : Switch bands to AM and tune to the last AM radio station.

“Switch to FM” : Switch bands to FM and tune to the last FM radio station.

“Switch to DAB” : Switch bands to DAB and tune to the last DAB radio station.

“Tune to <AM frequency> AM” : Tune to the radio station whose frequency is identified in the command (like “nine fifty”).

“Tune to <FM frequency> FM” : Tune to the radio station whose frequency is identified in the command (like “one oh one point one”).

“Tune to <DAB station name> DAB” : Tune to the radio station name.

Voice Recognition for Audio My Media

The available voice recognition commands for [browsing] MyMedia are:

“Play Artist” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific artist name.

“Play Artist <artist name>” : Begin playback of a specific artist.

“Play Album” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific album name.

“Play Album <album name>” : Begin playback of a specific album.

“Play Song” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific song name.

“Play Song <song name>” : Begin playback of a specific song, if available.

“Play Genre” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific genre.

“Play Genre <genre name>” : Begin playback of a specific genre.

“Play Playlist” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific playlist name.

“Play Playlist <playlist name>” : Begin playback of a specific playlist.

“Play <device name>” : Play music from a specific device identified by name. The device name is the name showing on the display when the device is first selected as an audio source.

“Play Chapter” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific name.

“Play Chapter <chapter name>” : Begin playback of a specific chapter.

“Play Audiobook” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific audiobook.

“Play Audiobook <audiobook name>” : Begin playback of a specific audiobook.

“Play Episode” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific name.

“Play Episode <episode name>” : Begin playback of a specific episode.

“Play Podcast” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific podcast.

“Play Podcast <podcast name>” : Begin playback of a specific podcast.

“My Media” : Begin a dialog to enter the desired media content.

Handling Large Amounts of Media Content

It is expected that large amounts of media content will be brought into the vehicle. It may be necessary to handle large amounts of media content in a different way than smaller amounts of media. The system may limit the options of voice recognition by not allowing selection of files by voice at the highest level if the number of files exceeds the maximum limit.

Changes to voice commands due to media content limits are:

- Files including other individual files of all media types such as songs, audiobook chapters, podcast episodes, and videos.
- Album type folders including types such as albums and audiobooks.

There are no restrictions if the number of files and albums is less than 12,000. When the number of files connected to the system is between 12,000 and 24,000, the content cannot be accessed directly with one command like “Play <song name>”.

The restriction is that the command “Play Song” must be spoken first; the system will then ask for the song name. The reply command would be to say the name of the song to play.

Similar limits exist for album content. If there are more than 12,000 albums, but less than 24,000, the content cannot be accessed directly with one command like, “Play <album name>”. The command “Play Album” must first be spoken; the system will then ask for the album name. The reply would be to say the name of the album to play.

Once the number of files has exceeded approximately 24,000, there is no support for accessing the songs directly through voice commands. There will still be access to the media content by using commands for playlists, artists, and genres.

The access commands for playlists, artists, and genres are prohibited after the number of this type of media exceeds 12,000.

The system will provide feedback the first time voice recognition is initiated if it has become apparent that any of these limits are reached during a device initialising process.

Voice recognition performance will degrade to some extent based on many factors when adding large amounts of data to recognise. If this is the case, perhaps accessing songs through playlists or artist name would work better.

Voice Recognition for Navigation

“Navigation” : Begin a dialogue to enter specific destination information.

“Navigation Commands” : Begin a dialogue to enter specific destination information.

“Address” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific destination address, which includes the entire address consisting of the house number, street name, city, and country.

“Place of Interest” : Begin a dialog to enter a destination Place of Interest category or major brand name.

The name must be precisely spoken. Nicknames or short names for the businesses will not likely be found. Lesser known businesses might have to be located by category, such as restaurants, hotels, or banks.

“Navigate to Contact” : Begin a dialogue to enter a specific destination contact name.

“Cancel Route” : End route guidance.

“Take Me Home” : Create a route to a stored home location.

Voice Recognition for the Phone

“Call <contact name>” : Initiate a call to a stored contact. The command may include location if the contact has location numbers stored.

“Call <contact> At Home,” “At Work,” “On Mobile,” or “On Other” : Initiate a call to a stored contact and location at home, at work, on mobile device, or on another phone.

“Call <mobile phone number>” : Initiate a call to a mobile phone number of seven digits, 10 digits, or three digit emergency numbers.

“Pair Phone” : Begin the Bluetooth pairing process. Follow the instructions on the radio display.

“Redial” : Initiate a call to the last dialled number.

“Switch Phone” : Select a different connected mobile phone for outgoing calls.

“Voice Keypad” : Begin a dialog to enter special numbers like international numbers. The numbers can be entered in groups of digits with each group of digits being repeated back by the system. If the group of digits is not correct, the command “Delete” will remove the last group of digits and allow them to be re-entered. Once the entire number has been entered, the command “Call” will start dialling the number.

Bluetooth Voice Recognition (Pass-thru)

Press and hold on the steering wheel controls for longer than one second to access Bluetooth Voice Recognition/Siri Eyes Free.

Bluetooth voice recognition is not available during an active phone projection session, such as Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

Phone

Bluetooth

The Bluetooth-capable system can interact with many mobile phones, allowing:

- Placement and receipt of calls in a hands-free mode.
- Sharing of the phone's address book or contact list with the vehicle.

To minimise driver distraction, before driving, and with the vehicle parked:

- Become familiar with the features of the mobile phone. Organise the phone book and contact lists clearly and delete duplicate or rarely used entries. If possible, program speed dial or other shortcuts.
- Review the controls and operation of the infotainment system.

- Pair mobile phone(s) to the vehicle. The system may not work with all mobile phones. See “Pairing” later in this section.

Vehicles with a Bluetooth system can use a Bluetooth-capable mobile phone with a Hands-Free Profile to make and receive phone calls. The infotainment system and voice recognition are used to control the system. The system can be used while the ignition is on or in ACC/ACCESSORY. The range of the Bluetooth system can be up to 9.1 m. Not all mobile phones support all functions and not all mobile phones work with the Bluetooth system. See your dealer for more information about compatible mobile phones, or go to the Owners section at www.holden.com.au.

Controls

Use the controls on the instrument panel and the steering wheel controls to operate the Bluetooth system.

Steering Wheel Controls

: Press to answer incoming calls. Hold to start voice recognition on your connected Bluetooth mobile phone.

: Press to end a call, decline a call, or cancel an operation. Press to mute or unmute the infotainment system when not on a call.

Infotainment System Controls

For information about how to navigate the menu system using the infotainment controls, see *Using the System* ⇨ *102*.

Audio System

When using the Bluetooth mobile phone system, sound comes through the vehicle's front audio system speakers and overrides the audio system. The volume level while on a mobile phone call can be adjusted by pressing the steering wheel controls or the volume control on the instrument panel. The adjusted volume level remains in memory for later calls. The volume cannot be lowered beyond a certain level.

Pairing

A Bluetooth-enabled mobile phone must be paired to the Bluetooth system and then connected to the vehicle before it can be used. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide for Bluetooth functions before pairing the phone.

Pairing Information

- If no mobile phone has been connected, the Phone main page on the infotainment display will show the Connect Phone option. Touch this option to connect. Another way to connect is to touch the Phones tab at the top right of the display and then touch Add Phone.
- A Bluetooth smartphone with music capability can be paired to the vehicle as a smartphone and a music player at the same time.
- Up to 10 phones can be paired to the Bluetooth system.

- Pairing only needs to be completed once, unless the pairing information on the phone changes or it is deleted from the system.
- If multiple paired phones are within range of the system, the system connects to the paired phone that is set to First to Connect. If there is no phone set to First to Connect, it will link to the phone which was used last. To link to a different paired phone, see “Linking to a Different Phone” later in this section.

Pairing a Phone

1. Make sure Bluetooth has been enabled on the phone before the pairing process is started.
2. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page or the phone icon on the shortcut tray near the bottom of the display.
3. Touch Phones at the top of the infotainment display. There is also a Connect Phone option in the middle of the Phone display which will shortcut to the Phone List menu.
4. Touch Add Phone.
5. Select the vehicle name shown on the infotainment display from your phone's Bluetooth Settings list, e.g. 'myHolden'.
6. Follow the instructions on the phone to confirm the six-digit code showing on the infotainment display and touch Pair. The code on the phone and infotainment display will need to be acknowledged for a successful pair.
7. Start the pairing process on the phone to be paired to the vehicle. See the phone manufacturer's user guide for information on this process. Once the phone is paired, it will show under Connected.
8. If the vehicle name does not appear on your phone, there are a few ways to start the pairing process over.
   - Turn the phone off and then back on.
   - Go back to the beginning of the Phone menus on the infotainment display and restart the pairing process.
   - Reset the phone, but this step should be done as a last effort.
9. If the phone prompts to accept connection or allow phone book download, touch Always Accept and Allow. The phone book may not be available if not accepted.
10. Repeat Steps 1–8 to pair additional phones.

First to Connect Paired Phones

If multiple paired mobile phones are within range of the system, the system connects to the paired

phone that is set as First to Connect. To enable a paired phone as the First to Connect phone:

1. Make sure the phone is turned on.
2. From the Home screen, touch Settings, then touch System.
3. Touch Phones to access all paired and all connected phones.
4. Touch ⊘ to the right of the phone to open the phone's settings menu.
5. Select the First to Connect option, to enable the setting for that phone.

Mobile phones can be added, removed, connected, and disconnected. A sub-menu will display whenever a request is made to add or manage phones.

Secondary Phone

A mobile phone can be enabled as a Secondary Phone by touching the information icon to the right of the paired phone name to open the phone settings menu. If a phone is enabled as a Secondary Phone, it can connect simultaneously alongside another Bluetooth mobile phone. In doing so, the Secondary Phone will be labelled as Incoming Calls. This means the mobile phone can only receive calls. The Address Book of a Secondary Phone will not be available and hands-free outgoing calls cannot be placed using this phone.

If needed, touch the Secondary Phone while in the Phones list to swap it into the Outgoing and Incoming role. This role makes it possible to place outgoing calls from the Contacts and Recents list.

Listing All Paired and Connected Phones

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page or the phone icon on the shortcut tray near the bottom of the display.
2. Touch Phones.

Disconnecting a Connected Phone

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.
2. Touch Phones.
3. Touch the information icon next to the connected phone to show the phone's information display.
4. Touch Disconnect.

Deleting a Paired Phone

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page or the phone icon on the shortcut tray near the bottom of the display.
2. Touch Phones.
3. Touch the information icon next to the connected phone to display the phone's information display.
4. Touch Forget Phone.

Linking to a Different Phone

To link to a different mobile phone, the new phone must be in the vehicle and paired to the Bluetooth system.

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page or the phone icon on the shortcut tray near the bottom of the display.
2. Touch Phones.
3. Touch the new phone to link to from the Not Connected phone list.

Switching to Handset or Hands free Mode

To switch between handset or handsfree mode:

- While the active call is hands-free, touch the Handset option to switch to the handset mode.

  The mute icon will not be available or functional while Handset mode is active.
- While the active call is on the handset, touch the Handset option to switch to the hands-free mode.

Making a Call Using Contacts and Recent Calls

Calls can be made through the Bluetooth system using personal phone contact information for all mobile phones that support the Phone Book feature. Become familiar with the phone settings and operation. Verify the phone supports this feature.

The Contacts menu accesses the phone book stored in the phone.

The Recents menu accesses the Recents call list from your phone.

To make a call using the Contacts menu:

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.
2. Touch Contacts.
3. The Contacts list can be searched by using the first character. Touch A-Z on the infotainment display to scroll through the list of names.

   Select the name to call.
4. Touch the desired contact number to call.

To make a call using the Recents menu:

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.
2. Touch Recents.
3. Touch the name or number to call.

Making a Call Using the Keypad

To make a call by dialling the numbers:

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.
2. Touch Keypad and enter a phone number.
3. Touch to start dialling the number.

Searching Contacts Using the Keypad

To search for contacts using the keypad:

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.
2. Touch Keypad and enter partial phone numbers or contact names using the digits on the keypad to search.

   Results will show on the right side of the display. Touch one to place a call.

Accepting or Declining a Call

When an incoming call is received, the infotainment system mutes and a ring tone is heard in the vehicle.

Accepting a Call

There are two ways to accept a call:

- Press on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch Answer on the infotainment display.

Declining a Call

There are two ways to decline a call:

- Press on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch Ignore on the infotainment display.

Call Waiting

Call waiting must be supported on the Bluetooth phone and enabled by the mobile service carrier to work.

Accepting a Call

Press to answer, then touch Switch on the infotainment display.

Declining a Call

Press to decline, then touch Ignore on the infotainment display

Switching Between Calls (Call Waiting Calls Only)

To switch between calls, touch the Phone icon on the Home Page to display Call View. While in Call View, touch the call information of the call on hold to change calls.

Three-Way Calling

Three-way calling must be supported on the Bluetooth phone and enabled by the mobile service carrier to work.

To start a three-way call while in a current call:

1. In the Call View, touch Add Call to add another call.
2. Initiate the second call by selecting from Recents, Contacts, or Keypad.
3. When the second call is active, touch the merge icon to conference the three-way call together.

Ending a Call

- Press on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch next to a call to end only that call.

Dual Tone Multi-Frequency (DTMF) Tones

The in-vehicle Bluetooth system can send numbers during a call. This is used when calling a menu-driven phone system. Use the Keypad to enter the number.

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto

Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay capability may be available through a compatible smartphone. The Android Auto and Apple CarPlay icons are displayed on the Home Page of the infotainment display.

To use Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay:

1. Download the Android Auto App to your Android smartphone from the Google Play store. There is no App required for Apple CarPlay.
2. Connect your Android phone or Apple iPhone by using the compatible smartphone USB cable and plugging into the USB data port located at the front of the centre console. If equipped, the USB ports at the rear of the console are for charging only.

   For best performance it is highly recommended to use the device's factory-provided USB cable. Aftermarket or third-party cables may not work.
3. When the phone is first connected to activate Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, the message “Device Projection Privacy Consent” will appear.
   - Touch Continue to launch Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.
   - Touch Disable to remove Apple CarPlay and Android Auto capability from the vehicle Settings menu. Other functions may still work.

The Android Auto and Apple CarPlay icons on the Home Page will illuminate depending on the smartphone. Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay may automatically launch upon USB connection. If not, touch the Android Auto or Apple CarPlay icon on the Home Page to launch.

Press ⌂ on the instrument panel to return to the Home Page.

Features are subject to change. For further information on how to set up Android Auto and Apple CarPlay in the vehicle, see your dealer.

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto can be disabled from the infotainment system. To do this, touch Home, Settings, and then touch the Apps tab along the top of the display. Use the On/Off toggled to turn off Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

Android Auto is provided by Google and is subject to Google’s terms and privacy policy. Apple CarPlay is provided by Apple and is subject to Apple's terms and privacy policy. Data plan rates apply. For Android Auto support see https://support.google.com/androidauto. For Apple CarPlay support see www.apple.com/ios/carplay/. Apple or Google may change or suspend availability at any time. Android Auto, Android, Google, Google Play, and other marks are trademarks of Google Inc.; Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Settings

Depending on vehicle model, the settings menu may be organised into four categories. Select the desired category by touching System, Apps, Vehicle or Personal.

Note

This section describes the features under the System, Apps and Personal tabs. For features in the Vehicle tab see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *87*.

To access the settings menus:

1. Touch ⚙ Settings on the Home Page on the infotainment display.
2. Touch the desired category to display a list of available options.
3. Touch to select the desired feature setting.
4. Touch the options on the infotainment display to disable or enable a feature.
5. Touch ✕ to go to the top level of the Settings menu.

System

The menu may contain the following:

Time / Date

Use the following features to set the clock:

- Automatic Time and Date: Touch Off or On to enable or disable automatic update of the time and date. When this feature is on, the time and date cannot be manually set.
- Set Time: Touch to manually set the time using the controls on the infotainment display.
- Set Date: Touch to manually set the date using the controls on the infotainment display.
- Automatic Time Zone: Touch to automatically set the time zone.
- Select Time Zone: Touch to manually set the time zone. Automatic Time Zone must be off to access this item. Touch a time zone from the list.
- Use 24-hour Format: Touch to specify the clock format shown.

  Touch Off or On to disable or enable.

Language

This will set the display language used on the infotainment display. It may also use the selected language for voice recognition and audio feedback. Touch Language and touch the appropriate language.

Phones

Touch to connect to a mobile phone, change phone, disconnect a phone, or delete a phone.

Privacy

This setting enables or disables sharing vehicle location and other data.

Touch and the following may display:

- Location Services.
- Voice Recognition Sharing
- Types
- Used by Applications

Display

Touch and the following may display:

- Mode: This adjusts the appearance of the navigation map view and any downloaded Apps optimised for day or night time conditions. Set to Auto for the display to automatically adjust based on bright/dark conditions.

  Touch Auto, Day, or Night to adjust the display.
- Calibrate Touchscreen: Touch to calibrate the infotainment display and follow the prompts.
- Turn Display Off: Touch to turn the display off. Touch anywhere on the infotainment display or press any infotainment control button to turn the display on.

Sounds

Touch and the following may display:

- Maximum Startup Volume: This feature adjusts the maximum volume of the infotainment system when you start your vehicle. To set the maximum startup volume, touch the controls on the infotainment display to increase or decrease.
- Startup/Shutdown Sounds: This setting specifies if a sound plays when the infotainment system starts or shuts down. This feature can be turned off or on.
- Startup/Shutdown Audio Volume: This setting controls the volume of the startup and shutdown sounds. Use the controls to adjust.
- Audible Touch Feedback: This setting determines if a sound plays when touching the infotainment display or radio controls. This feature can be turned off or on.

Voice

Touch and the following may display:

- Confirm More/Less: This setting specifies how often the voice recognition system confirms commands. Touch Confirm More to have the system check with you more often before acting on your commands.
- Prompt Length: This setting specifies the amount of detail the voice recognition system provides when giving you feedback. Touch Auto to have the system automatically adjust to your speech habits. Touch Informative, Short, or Auto.
- Audio Feedback Speed: Touch Slow, Medium, or Fast to adjust how quickly the voice recognition system speaks.
- Tutorial Mode: This setting determines if voice sessions provide tutorial feedback on the display.

Favourites

Touch and the following may display:

- Manage Favourites: Touch to display a list of Audio, Phone, and Navigation favourites.

  Favourites can be moved, renamed, or deleted.

To move, touch and hold the favourite, and then drag up or down to rearrange the position.

- Set Number of Audio Favourites: Touch to select how many favourites pages can be viewed from the audio application. The Auto setting will automatically adjust this number based on the number of favourites you have saved. Touch Auto, 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, or 40.

Vehicle Software

The following may be displayed under the Vehicle Software title.

- Updates: Touch to update the software.
- About: Touch to view the infotainment system software information.
- Running Applications: Display a list of the applications currently running.
- Return to Factory Settings: Resets all system settings to the factory default.

Updates

Touch to update the software.

About

Touch to view the infotainment system software information.

Restore Factory Settings

Touch and the following may display:

- Reset Vehicle Settings: Resets all vehicle settings for the current user.

  Touch Reset or Cancel.
- Delete Settings and Personal Data: Erases App data settings, user profiles, and personal data including navigation and mobile device data.

  Touch Erase or Cancel.

Apps

The menu may contain the following:

Android Auto

This feature allows you to interact directly with your mobile device on the infotainment display. See *Apple CarPlay and Android Auto* ⇨ *136*.

Touch the controls on the infotainment display to disable or enable.

Apple CarPlay

This feature allows you to interact directly with your mobile device on the infotainment display. See *Apple CarPlay and Android Auto* ⇨ *136*.

Touch the controls on the infotainment display to disable or enable.

Audio

Depending on the current audio source, different options will be available.

Touch and the following may display:

- Tone Settings: Touch to adjust Equaliser, Fade/Balance, or Sound Mode. See

"Infotainment System Sound Menu" in *AM-FM-DAB Radio* ⇨ *105*.

- Auto Volume: This feature adjusts the volume based on the vehicle speed.

  Touch Off, Low, Medium-Low, Medium, Medium-High, or High.

- Manage Favourites: Touch to display a list of Audio, Mobile Devices, and Navigation favourites.

  Favourites can be moved, renamed, or deleted.

  To move, touch and hold the favourite, and then drag up or down to rearrange the position.

- Set Number of Audio Favourites: Touch to select how many favourites pages can be viewed from the audio application. The Auto setting will automatically adjust this number based on the number of favourites you have saved. Touch Auto, 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, or 40.

- RDS: This allows the Radio Data System (RDS) to be turned on or off.

  Touch the controls on the infotainment display to disable or enable.

- Manage Devices: Select to connect to a different phone source, disconnect a phone, or delete a phone.

- Album Art: Select to display album art.

- Reset Music Index: This allows the music index to be reset if you are having difficulty accessing all of the media content on your device.

  Touch Yes or No.

Climate

Touch and the following may display:

- Auto Fan Speed: This setting specifies the amount of airflow when the climate control fan setting is Auto Fan.

  Touch Low, Medium, or High.

- Auto Demist: This setting automatically turns the front demister on when the engine is started.

  Touch the controls on the infotainment display to disable or enable.

- Auto Rear Demist: This setting automatically turns the rear window demister on when the engine is started.

  Touch the controls on the infotainment display to disable or enable.

Navigation

Touch and the following may display:

- Set Up My Places
- Map Preference
- Route Preferences
- Navigation Voice Control
- Alert Preferences
- Manage History
- About

See *Using the Navigation System* ⇨ *115*.

Phone

Touch and the following may display:

- My Number: Displays the mobile phone number of the Bluetooth connected device.
- Active Call View: Shows active call display when answering a call.

  Touch the options on the infotainment display to disable or enable.
- Privacy: Only show call alerts in the instrument cluster.

  Touch Off or On.
- Sort Contacts: Touch to sort by first or last name.
- Re-sync Device Contacts: This allows the device contacts to re-sync if you are having difficulty accessing all of the contacts on your mobile phone.

Personal

If equipped, this menu allows different user profile settings to be added. See “Users” in *Using the System* ⇨ *102*.

The menu may contain the following:

Name

Touch to edit your user name that will be displayed in the vehicle.

Profile Picture

Touch to choose or change your profile picture.

Profile Identifiers

Touch to have the vehicle recognise the identifier you choose.

Touch Vehicle Key 1 and/or Vehicle Key 2.

If the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is lost or stolen, see your dealer.

Security

Touch to have your profile secured with a PIN. Touch No or Yes.

Delete Profile

Touch to remove the profile from the vehicle. Touch Remove or Cancel.

Trademarks and Licence Agreements

Made for iPod iPhone

"Made for iPod," and "Made for iPhone," mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod or iPhone may affect wireless performance. iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano, iPod shuffle, and iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Bluetooth

The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by General Motors is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

Schedule I: Gracenote EULA

gracenote

Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information see www.gracenote.com.

Music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. One or more patents owned by Gracenote may apply to this product and service. See the Gracenote website for a non-exhaustive list of applicable Gracenote patents. Gracenote, CDDB, MusicID, MediaVOCS, the Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote" logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote in the United States and/or other countries.

Gracenote Terms of Use

This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California ("Gracenote"). The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this application to do disc or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers or embedded databases (collectively, "Gracenote Servers") and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote

Data only by means of the intended End-User functions of this application or device.

This application or device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote.

You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive license to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your license terminates, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote Privacy Policy for the Gracenote service.

The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licensed to you "AS IS." Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT.

GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.

© 2014. Gracenote, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

MPEG4–AVC (H.264)

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE AVC PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD ("AVC VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM.

VC-1

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE VC-1 PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE VC-1 STANDARD ("VC-1 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODE VC-1 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE VC-1 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM.

MPEG4–Visual

USE OF THIS PRODUCT IN ANY MANNER THAT COMPLIES WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD IS PROHIBITED, EXCEPT FOR USE BY A CONSUMER ENGAGING IN PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITIES.

MP3

MPEG Layer-3 audio coding technology licensed from Fraunhofer IIS and Thomson.

WMV/WMA

This product includes technology owned by Microsoft Corporation and under a licence from Microsoft Licensing, GP. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a licence from Microsoft Corporation and/or Microsoft Licensing, GP as applicable.

Map End User License Agreement (Optional Equipment Applies Where Equipped)

END USER TERMS

The Map Data SD card (“Data”) is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms (this “End User License Agreement”) and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and HERE North America, LLC (“HERE”) and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

TERMS AND CONDITIONS

Personal Use Only: You agree to use this Data for the solely personal, noncommercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, timesharing or other similar purposes. Except as otherwise set forth herein, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws. You may transfer the Data and all accompanying materials on a permanent basis if you retain no copies and the recipient agrees to the terms of this End User License Agreement. Multi-disc sets may only be transferred or sold as a complete set as provided to you and not as a subset thereof.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by HERE and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with, or in communication with, including without limitation, mobile phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning

This Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used, and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty

This Data is provided to you “as is,” and you agree to use it at your own risk. HERE and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations, or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error free.

Disclaimer of Warranty

THE DATABASE IS PROVIDED ON AN “AS IS” AND “WITH ALL FAULTS BASIS” AND HARMAN (AND THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, ACCURACY, TITLE AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN ADVICE OR INFORMATION PROVIDED BY HARMAN (OR ANY OF THEIR LICENSORS, AGENTS, EMPLOYEES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS) SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY, AND YOU ARE NOT ENTITLED TO RELY ON ANY SUCH ADVICE OR INFORMATION. THIS DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES IS AN ESSENTIAL CONDITION OF THIS AGREEMENT.

Disclaimer of Liability

HERE AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THIS DATA; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS DATA, ANY DEFECT IN THIS DATA, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF HERE OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories, and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export from anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations. Entire Agreement: These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between HERE (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois, without giving effect

to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois for any and all disputes, claims, and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users

If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with this End User License Agreement, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and be treated in accordance with such Notice:

NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER)

NAME:

HERE North America, LLC

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER)

ADDRESS:

425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, IL 60606.

This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to the End User License Agreement under which this Data was provided.

© 2014 HERE North America, LLC. All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

Unicode

Copyright © 1991-2010 Unicode, Inc. All rights reserved. Distributed under the Terms of Use in http://www.unicode.org/copyright.html.

Free Type Project

Portions of this software are copyright © 2010 The FreeType Project (http://www.freetype.org). All rights reserved.

Open Source SW

Further information concerning the OSS licences is shown in the infotainment display.

QNX

Portions of this software are copyright © 2008-2011, QNX Software Systems. All rights reserved.

Part C – EULA

Copyright 2011, Software Systems GmbH & Co. KG. All Rights Reserved.

The product you have purchased ("Product") contains Software (Runtime Configuration No. 505962; "Software") which is distributed by or on behalf of the Product manufacturer "Manufacturer") under license from Software Systems Co. ("QSSC"). You may only use the Software in the Product and in compliance with the license terms below.

Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, QSSC hereby grants you a limited, non-exclusive, non-transferable license to use the Software in the Product for the purpose intended by the Manufacturer. If permitted by the Manufacturer, or by applicable law, you may make one backup copy of the Software as part of the Product software. QSSC and its licensors reserve all license+C31 rights not expressly granted herein, and retain all right, title and interest in and to all copies of the Software, including all intellectual property rights therein. Unless required by applicable law you may not reproduce, distribute or transfer, or de-compile, disassemble or otherwise attempt to unbundle, reverse engineer, modify or create derivative works of, the Software. You agree: (1) not to remove, cover or alter any proprietary notices, labels or marks in or on the Software, and to ensure that all copies bear any notice contained on the original; and (2) not to export the Product or the Software in contravention of applicable export control laws.

EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT OTHERWISE REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW, QSSC AND ITS LICENSORS PROVIDE THE SOFTWARE ON AN "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. ANY WARRANTIES OR OTHER PROVISIONS OFFERED BY THE MANUFACTURER OR ITS DISTRIBUTOR(S) THAT DIFFER FROM THIS LICENSE ARE OFFERED BY THE MANUFACTURER OR ITS DISTRIBUTOR(S) ALONE AND NOT BY QSSC, ITS AFFILIATES OR THEIR LICENSORS. YOU ASSUME ANY RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE UNDER THIS LICENSE.

EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT OTHERWISE REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW (SUCH AS IN THE CASE OF DELIBERATE OR GROSSLY NEGLIGENT ACTS), IN NO EVENT SHALL QSSC, ITS AFFILIATES OR THEIR LICENSORS BE LIABLE TO YOU

UNDER ANY LEGAL THEORY, WHETHER IN TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE), CONTRACT OR OTHERWISE, FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY CHARACTER ARISING AS A RESULT OF THIS LICENSE OR OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PRODUCT (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF GOODWILL, WORK STOPPAGE, PRODUCT FAILURE OR MALFUNCTION, OR ANY AND ALL OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES), EVEN IF QSSC, ITS AFFILIATES OR THEIR LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

WMA

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.

For more information on the Software, including any open source software license terms (and available source code) as well as copyright attributions applicable to the Runtime Configuration indicated above, please contact the Manufacturer or contact QSSC at 175 Terence Matthews Crescent, Kanata, Ontario, Canada K2M 1W8 (licensing@qnx.com).

Linotype

Helvetica is a trademark of Linotype Corp. registered in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office and may be registered in certain other jurisdictions in the name of Linotype Corp. or its licensee Linotype GmbH.

Usage in text form of each of the Licensed Trademarks is:

The trademark attribution requirements for the Licensed Trademarks may be viewed at http://www.linotype.com/2061-19414/trademarks.html.

END USER NOTICE

The marks of companies displayed by this product to indicate business locations are the marks of their respective owners. The use of such marks in this product does not imply any sponsorship, approval, or endorsement by such companies of this product.

Climate Controls

Climate Control Systems
Climate Control Systems 150
Air Conditioning System 150
Electronic Climate Control System 152

Air Vents
Adjustable Air Vents 158
Fixed Air Vents 159

Maintenance
Air Intake 159
Air Conditioning Regular Operation 159
Service 160

Climate Control Systems

Depending on model, the vehicle may be equipped with an air conditioning system or electronic climate control system.

Air Conditioning System

Controls

The following features are available:

- Control dial for temperature
- Air distribution , , .
- : Fan speed.
- : Windscreen demisting and defrosting.
- **A/C** : Turns the air conditioning on or off.
- : Manual air recirculation.
- : Heated rear window and exterior mirrors, if equipped. See *Heated Rear Window* ⇨ *26*.

Air Conditioning (A/C)

Press **A/C** to turn the air conditioning on of off. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

Cooling is only functional when the engine is running and the fan is operating.

The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) when the outside temperature is above a specific level. Therefore, condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle. This is normal.

If no cooling or drying is required, switch off the cooling system for fuel saving reasons.

When air conditioning is on, the system may inhibit an Auto-stop.

See *Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ *168*.

Air Recirculation

Press to activate air recirculation mode. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

Press again to deactivate air recirculation mode.

⚠ Warning

The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. The quality of passenger

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

compartment air deteriorates, which may cause the vehicle occupants to feel drowsy.

When operating without air conditioning, air humidity increases and mist may form inside the windows.

In warm and very humid ambient conditions, mist may form on the outside of the windscreen when cold air is directed towards it. If this occurs, activate the windscreen wipers and deactivate .

Maximum Cooling

Briefly open the windows so that hot air can disperse quickly.

- Press **A/C**.
- Press air circulation button on.
- Press air distribution button .
- Set the temperature control to coldest level.
- Set the fan speed to highest level.
- Open all vents.

Window Demisting and Defrosting

- Press . The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.
- Set the fan speed to highest level.
- Set the temperature control to warmest level.
- Open the side vents as required and direct them towards the door windows.

Note

If is pressed while the engine is running, an Autostop will be inhibited until is pressed again.

If is pressed with the fan switched on and the engine running, an Auto-stop will be inhibited until is pressed again or the fan is turned off.

If is pressed while the engine is an Auto-stop, the engine will restart automatically.

If is pressed with the fan switched on while the engine is in an Auto-stop, the engine will restart automatically.

See *Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ *168*.

Electronic Climate Control System

The dual zone climate control system allows individual temperature settings for the driver and front passenger sides.

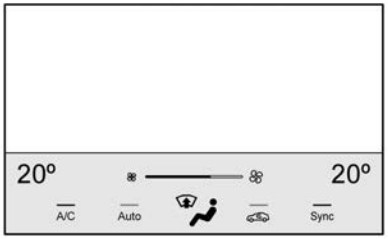
In automatic mode, temperature, fan speed and air distribution are regulated automatically.

Controls

The following features are available:

- Control dial for driver temperature adjustment.
- Control dial for front passenger temperature adjustment.
- Air distribution , , .
- : Fan speed.
- **ON/OFF** : Turns the climate control system on or off.
- **A/C** : Turns the air conditioning on or off.
- **AUTO** : Automatic mode.
- : Manual air recirculation.
- : Windscreen demisting and defrosting.
- **SYNC** : Driver and passenger temperature synchronisation.
- REAR : Heated rear window and exterior mirrors. See *Heated Rear Window* ⇨ *26*.
- : Heated seats. See *Heated Front Seats* ⇨ *33*.
- : Heated steering wheel. See *Heated Steering Wheel* ⇨ *59*.

Activated functions are indicated by an LED.



Each setting change is shown in the infotainment system display for a few seconds.

The electronic climate control system is only fully operational when the engine is running.

Automatic Mode

Basic settings for automatic control with maximum comfort:

- Press **AUTO**. Air distribution and fan speed are regulated automatically.
- Open all air vents to allow optimised air distribution in automatic mode.
- Press **A/C** to switch on optimal cooling and demisting. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.
- Set the preselected temperatures separately for the driver and front passenger using the left and right control dials.

The fan speed regulation in automatic mode can be changed in the Settings menu. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *87*.

menu.

Temperature Preselection

Set the temperatures separately for the driver and front passenger to the desired value using the left and right control dials.

- The dial on the passenger side changes the temperature for the front passenger side.
- The dial on the driver's side changes the temperature for the driver's side, or for both sides depending on activation of synchronisation (**SYNC**).

Temperature is indicated in each dial.

If the minimum temperature **Lo** is set, the climate control system runs at maximum cooling if the A/C is on.

If the maximum temperature **Hi** is set, the climate control system runs at maximum heating.

Note

If A/C is switched on, reducing the set cabin temperature can cause the engine to restart from an Autostop or inhibit an Autostop. See *Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ *168*.

Dual Zone Temperature Synchronisation

Press **SYNC** to link the front passenger's side temperature setting to the driver's side. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

- If the driver's side control dial is adjusted, both sides will be set at the same temperature.
- If the front passenger side control dial is adjusted, synchronisation is deactivated and individual temperatures can be set.

Window Demisting and Defrosting

Press . The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

- Temperature and air distribution are set automatically and the fan runs at high speed.
- To return to previous mode press again. To return to automatic mode press **AUTO**.

Switch on heated rear window REAR. See *Heated Rear Window* ⇨ *26*.

Note

If is pressed while the engine is running, an Autostop will be inhibited until is pressed again.

If is pressed with the fan switched on and the engine running, an Auto-stop will be inhibited until is pressed again or the fan is turned off.

If is pressed while the engine is an Auto-stop, the engine will restart automatically.

If is pressed with the fan switched on while the engine is in an Auto-stop, the engine will restart automatically.

See *Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ *168*.

System ON/OFF

Cooling, fan and automatic mode can be switched off by pressing **ON/OFF**. When the system is deactivated, the LED in the button is off. Activate the system by pressing

ON/OFF, **A/C** or **AUTO**. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

Manual Settings

Climate control system settings can be changed by activating the following functions as described below. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

Changing a setting will deactivate Automatic mode.

Fan Speed

Press the left ⌘ button to decrease fan speed, or the right ⌘ button to increase fan speed. The fan speed is indicated by the number of LEDs illuminated in the button.

Pressing the left ⌘ button for longer turns the fan and cooling off.

Press the right ⌘ button for longer and the fan runs at maximum speed.

To return to automatic mode press **AUTO**.

Air Distribution

Press the following buttons for desired adjustment:

: Windscreen and front door windows. Air conditioning is activated in the background to help preventing the windows from fogging.

: Head area via adjustable air vents.

: Foot well and windscreen.

All combinations are possible. To return to automatic air distribution press **AUTO**.

Air Conditioning (A/C)

Press **A/C** to turn the air conditioning on of off. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

Cooling is only functional when the engine is running and the climate control system fan is operating.

The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) when the outside temperature is above a specific level. Therefore, condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle. This is normal.

If no cooling or drying is required, switch off the cooling system for fuel saving reasons.

When the cooling system is switched off, no engine restart will be requested by the climate control system during an Auto-stop.

Exception: The demist system is activated and outside temperature above 0°C requests a restart.

See *Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ *168*. The display will indicate A/C ON when cooling is activated or A/C OFF when the cooling is deactivated.

Manual Air Recirculation

Press ⟲ to activate air recirculation mode. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

Press ⟲ again to deactivate air recirculation mode.

⚠ Warning

The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. The quality of passenger compartment air deteriorates, which may cause the vehicle occupants to feel drowsy.

When operating without air conditioning, air humidity increases and mist may form inside the windows.

In warm and very humid ambient conditions, mist may form on the outside of the windscreen when cold air is directed towards it. If this occurs, activate the windscreen wipers and deactivate .

Automatic Air Recirculation

If equipped, an air humidity sensor automatically sets the system to external air if internal air humidity is too high.

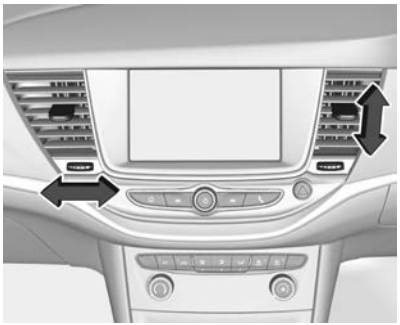
Basic Settings

Some settings can be changed in the Settings menu. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *87*.

Air Vents

Adjustable Air Vents

At least one air vent must be open while the climate control system is on.



Centre air vents in the instrument panel.

To open or close the vent turn the wheel. Direct air flow by tilting and swivelling the slats.

Outer vents in the instrument panel.

To open or close the vent turn the wheel. Direct air flow by tilting and swivelling the slats.

⚠ Warning

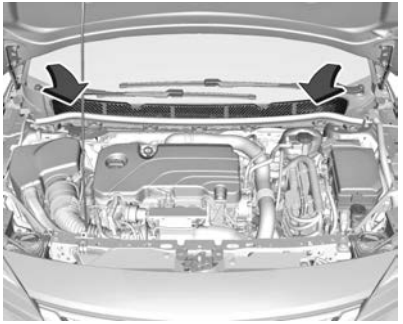
Do not attach objects to the vents. Damage or injury may occur.

Fixed Air Vents

Additional air vents are located beneath the windscreen and door windows and in the footwells.

Maintenance

Air Intake



The air intake in front of the windscreen in the engine compartment must be kept clear to allow air intake.

Remove any leaves, dirt or snow.

Cabin Air Filter

Change the cabin air filter (pollen filter) according to the maintenance schedule for maximum effect. Refer to your Service and Warranty booklet.

Note

If driving in dusty conditions, the cabin air filter may require more frequent maintenance. Contact a dealer.

Air Conditioning Regular Operation

To ensure continuously efficient performance, the air conditioner must be operated for a few minutes once a month, irrespective of the weather and time of year.

Service

For optimal cooling performance, have the climate control system serviced according to the maintenance schedule. Refer to your Service and Warranty booklet.

Driving and Operating

Driving Information
Driving Environment 162

Starting and Operating
New Vehicle Running-in 163
Ignition Positions 163
Starting the Engine 166
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) 167
Overrun Cut-Off 168
Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature 168
Parking 170

Engine Exhaust
Engine Exhaust 171
Catalytic Converter 171

Automatic Transmission
Automatic Transmission 172
Transmission Display 172
Shift Lever 172
Manual Mode 174
Electronic Driving Programs 174
Fault 175
Interruption of Power Supply 175

Brakes
Brakes 176
Antilock Brake System (ABS) 176
Parking Brake 177
Electric Parking Brake 177
Brake Assist 179
Hill Start Assist (HSA) 179

Ride Control Systems
Traction Control System (TCS) 180
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 181
Sport Mode 182

Driver Assistance Systems
Driver Assistance Systems . . . 183
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) . . . 183
Parking Assist 186
Advanced Parking Assist 190
Cruise Control 194
Speed Limiter 196
Adaptive Cruise Control 198
Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System 205
Following Distance Indication System 209
Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) 210
Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) 214
Lane Keep Assist (LKA) 216

Fuel
Fuel 218
Recommended Fuel 218
Filling the Tank 219

Trailer Towing
Trailer Towing 220
Trailer Sway Control (TSC) . . . 223

Conversions and Add-Ons
Add-On Electrical Equipment 224

Driving Information

Driving Environment

Before Entering the Vehicle

Check the windows, mirrors and lamps are clean.

Visually check tyre inflation. Check tyre pressures weekly.

Before Driving Off

1. Close and secure all doors.
2. Position the seat for comfortable driving.
3. Adjust the rear view mirrors.
4. Fasten the seat belts.
5. Check the instrument cluster indicators illuminate when turning the ignition on and go off once the engine is started. See *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *66*.

Control of the Vehicle

Never Coast with the Engine Not Running

Many systems will not function in this situation, e.g. brake servo unit, power steering.

Driving in this manner is a danger to yourself and others.

Idle Boost

If charging of the vehicle battery is required due to the battery's condition, the power output of the alternator must be increased. This may be achieved by an idle boost which may be audible.

Floor Mats

To ensure that pedal travel is uninhibited, use only floor mats which fit properly and are fixed by the retainers on the driver's side.

⚠ Warning

If a floor mat is the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with the accelerator pedal and/or brake pedal. Interference with the pedals can cause unintended acceleration and/or increased stopping distance which can cause a crash and injury.

Make sure the floor mat does not interfere with the accelerator or brake pedal.

Steering

If power steering assistance is lost because the engine stops or due to a system malfunction, the vehicle can be steered but may require increased effort.

Starting and Operating

New Vehicle Running-in

During the first 1000 km of driving use moderate acceleration, do not make full-throttle starts and do not drive at any one constant speed. Do not brake unnecessarily hard for the first few journeys.

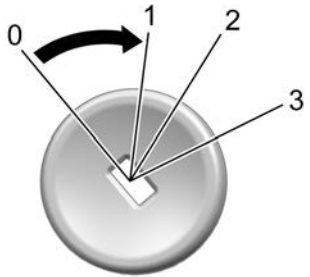
During the first drive, odours may be noticed due to protective wax and oil evaporating off the exhaust system. Park the vehicle in the open for a while after the first drive and avoid inhaling the fumes.

During the running-in period, fuel and engine oil consumption may be slightly higher.

Autostops may be inhibited to allow for charging of the vehicle battery, etc. See *Automatic Engine Start/ Stop Feature* ⇨ *168*.

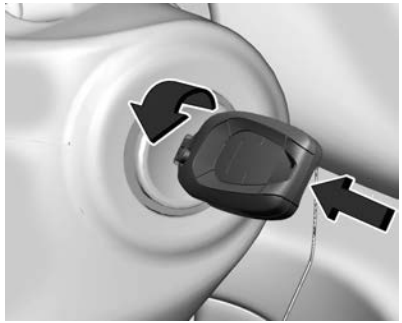
Ignition Positions

Vehicles With Ignition Switch



0 (LOCK) : When the key is in this position, some electrical accessories and the engine are off.

The key can only be inserted and removed from this position.



To turn off the vehicle:

1. When the vehicle is stationary, apply the parking brake.
2. Shift the shift lever to P (Park).
3. Push the key all the way in towards the steering column, then turn the key to Ignition off.
4. Remove the key.

The steering wheel is automatically locked when the key is removed.

To release the steering lock, re-insert the key and turn it towards the front of the vehicle. If still locked, turn the steering

wheel slightly to the right or left while turning the key towards the front of the vehicle.

1 (ACC) : Steering wheel lock is released, some electrical functions are operable, ignition is off.

2 (ON) : Ignition is on. Instrument cluster indicators illuminate and most electrical functions are operable.

3 (START) : Turn the key to this position. Release once the starting procedure begins.

⚠ Warning

Do not turn the engine off while the vehicle is moving as there will not be any power assist for brakes or steering. Never remove the key while the vehicle is moving, as this will lock the steering.

Vehicles With Engine Start/ Stop Button

Pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button cycles the ignition through the following Modes. The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter must be inside the vehicle.

Accessory Power Mode

Press the ENGINE START/STOP button once without pressing the brake pedal.

The yellow LED in the button illuminates and the steering wheel lock is released. Some electrical functions are operable, the ignition is off.

Ignition-on Power Mode

Press and hold the ENGINE START/STOP button for six seconds without pressing the brake pedal.

The green LED in the button illuminates; diesel engine is preheating. Instrument cluster indicators illuminate and most electrical functions are operable.

Engine Start

1. Move the shift lever to **P** (Park).
2. Press the brake pedal.
3. Press the ENGINE START/ STOP button. Release once the starting procedure begins.

See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *166*.

Ignition-off

When the vehicle is stationary, apply the parking brake and engage **P** (Park).

Press the ENGINE START/STOP button briefly. Some functions remain active until the driver's door is opened.

Steering Wheel Lock

The steering wheel lock activates automatically when:

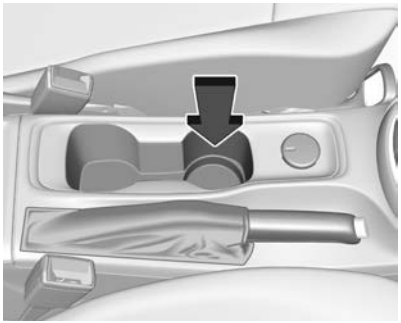
- The vehicle is stationary.
- The ignition has been turned off.
- The driver's door is opened.

To release the steering wheel lock, open and close driver's door and turn on Accessory Mode or start the engine directly.

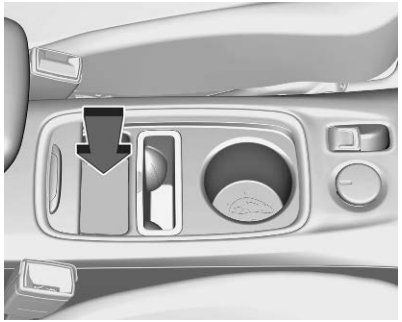
Operation in Case of Failure

If the RKE transmitter battery is depleted or the transmitter fails, the Driver Information Centre (DIC) may display a **No Remote Detected** or **Replace Battery in Remote Key** message when you try to start the vehicle.

1. Open the centre console cup holder cover, if equipped.
2. Depending on model, either:



– Place the RKE transmitter in the front cup holder with the buttons facing up.



– Place the RKE in the rear storage tray with the buttons facing up.

Other objects, e.g. other keys, transponders, tags, coins, etc. must be removed.

3. Start the engine. See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *166*.

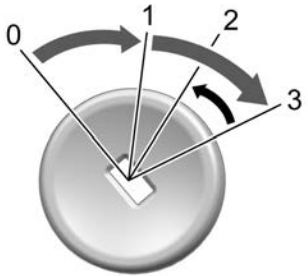
To turn off the engine, press the ENGINE START/STOP button again and remove the RKE transmitter from the transmitter pocket.

This option is intended for emergencies only. Replace the RKE transmitter battery as soon as

possible, see *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *9*. For unlocking or locking the doors, see *Door Locks* ⇨ *14*.

Starting the Engine

Vehicles With Ignition Switch



1. Apply the park brake firmly.
2. Move the shift lever to **P** (Park).
3. Do not operate accelerator pedal.

   Turn the key briefly to position **3** and release: An automatic procedure operates the starter with a short delay until the engine is running.

To switch off the engine, when vehicle is stationary, apply the parking brake and engage **P**. Push the key all the way in towards the steering column, then turn the key back to position **0**.

Note

- Do not press the accelerator pedal while starting the engine.
- Do not subject the engine to full throttle acceleration or high speeds until it has reached normal operating temperature.

  Premature engine wear or damage may result.

Vehicles With Engine Start/ Stop Button

1. Apply the park brake firmly.
2. Press the brake pedal and move the shift lever to **P** (Park).
3. Do not operate the accelerator pedal.

   Press the ENGINE START/ STOP button briefly: an automatic starter control procedure operates with a short delay until the engine is running.

To switch off the engine, when vehicle is stationary, apply the parking brake and engage **P**. Press the ENGINE START/STOP button briefly.

Note

- If **P** is not engaged a chime will sound.
- Do not press the accelerator pedal while starting the engine.
- Do not subject the engine to full throttle acceleration or high speeds until it has reached normal operating temperature.

  Premature engine wear or damage may result.

Emergency Engine Shut-off During Driving

If the engine needs to be turned off during driving in an emergency situation, press the ENGINE START/STOP button for more than two seconds or press twice briefly within five seconds.

⚠ Danger

Turning the engine off whilst driving may cause loss of power assistance to the brake and steering systems. Driver assistance systems and airbag systems are disabled. Lighting and tail lamps will extinguish.

Therefore shut off the engine and ignition while driving only in case of an emergency.

Automatic Starter Control

This function controls the engine starting procedure. The driver does not need to hold the ENGINE START/STOP button pressed.

Once applied, the system will continue starting automatically until the engine is running or for a certain period of time.

Due to a checking procedure, there may be a short delay until the engine starts.

Possible reasons for a non-starting engine include:

- The brake pedal is not pressed or the shift lever is not in **P**.
- Time-out occurred.

Turbo Engine Warm-up

Upon engine start-up, the available engine torque may be limited for a short time, especially when the engine temperature is cold. This limitation is to allow the lubrication system to fully protect the engine.

Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

The following electronic systems can operate until the driver's door is opened, or for 10 minutes after the ignition is turned off:

- Power windows.
- Sunroof.
- Power outlets.

Overrun Cut-Off

The fuel supply to the engine is automatically cut-off during an overrun, e.g. when driving with the a gear engaged and the accelerator pedal released.

Depending on driving conditions, the overrun cut-off may be deactivated.

Automatic Engine Start/ Stop Feature

The engine start-stop system helps to save fuel and reduce the exhaust emissions.

When conditions allow, it performs an Autostop and turns off the engine as soon as the vehicle is at a standstill, e.g. at a traffic light. The ignition remains on.

Activation

The engine start-stop system is available as soon as the engine is started, the vehicle starts-off and the conditions stated further in this section are fulfilled.

Deactivation

The engine start-stop system can be deactivated manually by pressing Ⓐ **OFF**. Deactivation is indicated when the LED in the button illuminates.

Autostop

An Autostop can be activated at standstill or at low speed up to 5 km/h.

If the vehicle is at a standstill with pressed brake pedal, Autostop is activated automatically. The engine will be switched off while the ignition stays on.

Indication

An Autostop is indicated by the needle at the AUTOSTOP position in the tachometer. After restarting, the engine speed is indicated.

During an Autostop, heating and brake performance will be maintained.

Conditions for an Autostop

The engine start-stop system checks if each of the following conditions is fulfilled.

- The engine start-stop system is not manually deactivated.

- The bonnet is fully closed.
- The driver's door is closed and the driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The vehicle battery is sufficiently charged and in good condition.
- The engine is warmed up.
- The engine coolant temperature is not too high.
- The engine exhaust temperature is not too high, e.g. after driving with high engine load.
- The ambient temperature is above -5 °C.
- The climate control system allows an Autostop.
- The brake vacuum is sufficient.
- The vehicle was driven at least at walking speed since the last Autostop.

Otherwise an Autostop will be inhibited.

The stop-start system will be disabled on inclines of 15% or more. If significant steering input is applied (1.6L only) an Autostop may be inhibited.

Certain settings of the climate control system may inhibit an Autostop. Immediately after freeway driving, an Autostop may be inhibited.

Vehicle Battery Discharge Protection

To ensure reliable engine restarts, several battery discharge protection features are implemented as part of the engine start-stop system.

Power Saving Measures

During an Autostop, several electrical features, such as the heated rear window, are disabled or switched to a power saving mode. The fan speed of the climate control system may also be reduced to save power.

Restart of the Engine by the Driver

A restart for all engines is possible at a standstill or at a low speed up to 7 km/h.

Release the brake pedal or move shift lever out of **D** into **N** or **P** to restart the engine.

Restart of the Engine by the Engine Start-Stop System

The shift lever must be in **D** (Drive) to enable an automatic restart.

If one of the following conditions occurs during an Autostop, the engine will be restarted automatically by the engine start-stop system:

- The engine start-stop system is manually deactivated.
- The bonnet is opened.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened.
- The engine temperature is too low.
- The charging level of the vehicle battery is below a defined level.
- The brake vacuum is not sufficient.
- The vehicle is being driven at least at walking speed.

- The climate control system requests an engine start.
- The air conditioning is manually switched on.
- A significant steering input or indicator is applied (1.6L only).

If the bonnet is not fully closed, a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

If an electrical accessory, e.g. a portable CD player, is connected to a power outlet, a brief power drop during the restart might be noticeable.

Parking

⚠ Warning

- Always apply the parking brake.

  Apply the manual parking brake without pressing the release button. Apply as firmly as possible on downhill or uphill gradients.

  (Continued)

Warning (Continued)

  Depress the brake pedal at the same time to reduce operating force.

- Move the shift lever to P (Park) before switching off the ignition.
- Switch off the engine and ignition. Turn the steering wheel until the steering wheel lock engages.
- On an uphill gradient turn the front wheels away from the kerb.

  On a downhill gradient turn the front wheels towards the kerb.

- Lock the vehicle.

1. Apply the park brake. Check that the indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster.
2. Move the shift lever to **P** (Park).
3. Close all windows and the sunroof, as desired.
4. Turn the ignition off, remove the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter and exit the vehicle.

Note

After running at high engine speed or with high engine loads, allow the engine to idle in **P** for approx. 30 seconds before turning off. This will help protect the turbocharger.

5. Press the 🔒 button on the RKE transmitter, or press the lock/unlock button on a door handle (with the RKE transmitter within 1 m of the door handle) to lock all doors.

Note

The engine fan may keep running for several minutes after the ignition has been turned off. This is normal.

⚠ Warning

Be careful where you park or drive. As with any vehicle, do not park or operate the vehicle in areas where combustible materials such as dry grass or leaves can come in contact with a hot exhaust system.

Exhaust gases are hazardous, especially if they concentrate in closed rooms.

Never leave the engine running in an enclosed space such as a closed garage or underground car park.

Engine Exhaust

⚠ Danger

EXHAUST WARNING – CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING

Exhaust gases can contain carbon monoxide, a dangerous gas, which can cause unconsciousness and even death to both humans and animals.

Gases could be inhaled if the exhaust system on your vehicle is faulty.

To protect against exhaust gases entering the vehicle, the exhaust system and body should be inspected:

- Each time the vehicle is serviced.
- Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system.

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

- Whenever the exhaust system, underbody or rear of the vehicle is damaged.

Take the vehicle to a Holden Dealer if you think the vehicle needs inspecting for any of the above reasons.

Do not sit (or leave children or pets) in a parked vehicle for any extended period of time with the engine running. Turn the fan on using any setting that brings outside air into the vehicle. Do not run the engine in an enclosed area (such as the garage) any longer than is needed to move the vehicle.

Catalytic Converter

The catalytic converter reduces the amount of harmful substances in the exhaust gases.

In the event of misfiring, uneven engine running, a reduction in engine performance or other unusual problems, have the cause of the fault rectified by a dealer as soon as possible.

Caution
Fuel grades other than those listed in this manual could damage the catalytic converter or electronic components. Unburnt petrol will overheat and damage the catalytic converter. Therefore avoid excessive use of the starter, running the fuel tank dry and starting the engine by pushing or towing.

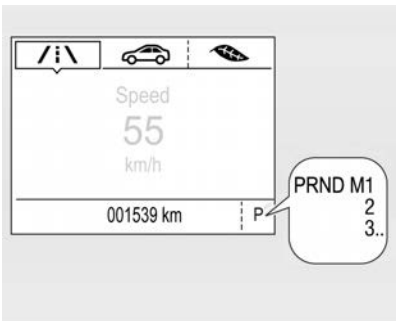
In an emergency, driving can be continued for a short period, keeping vehicle speed and engine speed low.

Automatic Transmission

The automatic transmission permits automatic gear shifting (automatic mode) or manual gear shifting (manual mode).

Manual shifting is possible in manual mode by tapping the shift lever to **+** or **-**.

Transmission Display



The transmission mode or selected gear is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

In automatic mode, the driving program is indicated by **D**.

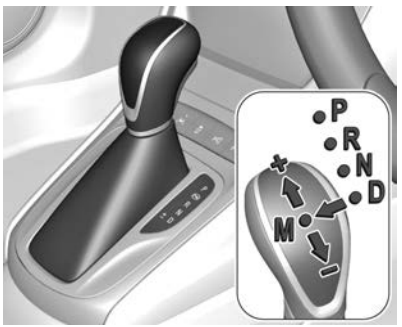
In manual mode, **M** and the number of the selected gear is indicated.

R indicates reverse gear.

N indicates neutral position.

P indicates park position.

Shift Lever



P : Park position. Wheels are locked. Engage only when the vehicle is stationary and the parking brake is applied

R : Reverse gear. Engage only when the vehicle is stationary

N : Neutral

D : Automatic mode

M : Manual mode

+ : Upshift in manual mode

− : Downshift in manual mode

Caution

Selecting position **P** while the vehicle is still moving can cause damage to the transmission.

Do not press the accelerator pedal with the brakes applied in any gear except position **P** or **N**. This will overheat the transmission.

The shift lever is locked in **P** and can only be moved when the ignition is on, the release button on the shift lever is pushed and the brake pedal is applied.

Without the brake pedal applied, illuminates. If the shift lever is not in **P** when the ignition is turned off, flashes.

To engage **P** or **R**, press the release button.

The engine can only be started with lever in position **P** or **N**. See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *166*

Do not accelerate while engaging a gear. Never press the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time.

When a gear is engaged, the vehicle begins to creep when the brake pedal is released.

⚠ Warning

To prevent the vehicle from moving when position **N** is selected, always apply the park brake, press the foot brake or use suitable chocks to block the wheels.

Do not coast the vehicle in position **N** – this decreases your control and ability to accelerate quickly in an emergency.

Caution
Do not use the accelerator pedal to hold the vehicle stationary on an uphill gradient. Use the brakes.

Engine Braking

To utilise the engine braking effect, select a lower gear when driving downhill. See *Manual Mode* ⇨ *174*.

Rocking the Vehicle

Rocking the vehicle is only permissible if the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud or snow. Move the shift lever between **D** and **R** in a repeated pattern.

Do not race the engine and avoid sudden acceleration.

Parking

Apply the parking brake and engage **P**. Ensure Ⓟ is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

The ignition key can only be removed when the shift lever is in **P**.

Manual Mode

Manual mode **M** can be activated from position **D** in any driving situation and speed.

Move the shift lever out of position **D** towards the left into position **M**.

- Tap the shift lever upwards **+** to shift to a higher gear.
- Tap the shift lever downwards **-** to shift to a lower gear.

The selected gear is indicated in the instrument cluster.

If a higher gear is selected when the vehicle speed is too low, or a lower gear when the vehicle speed is too high, the shift is not executed. This can cause a message in the Driver Information Centre.

In manual mode, no automatic shifting to a higher gear takes place at high engine revolutions.

Gear Shift Indication

The symbol ▲ or ▼ with a number beside it is indicated when gear shifting is recommended for fuel saving reasons.

Shift indication appears only in manual mode.

Electronic Driving Programs

- Following a cold start, the operating temperature program increases engine speed to quickly bring the catalytic converter to the required temperature.

- Special programs automatically adapt the shifting points when driving up inclines or down hills.
- In snowy or icy conditions or on other slippery surfaces, the electronic transmission control enables the driver to manually select first, second or third gear for starting off.

Kickdown

Pressing the accelerator pedal beyond the kick-down detent will lead to maximum acceleration independent of the selected driving mode.

The transmission shifts to a lower gear depending on engine speed.

Fault

In the event of a transmission fault, a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

If a fault is detected, the electronic transmission control enables only one gear and the transmission will no longer shift automatically.

Have the cause of the fault rectified by a dealer.

Interruption of Power Supply

In the event of an interruption to the power supply, the shift lever cannot be moved out of the **P** position. The ignition key cannot be removed from the ignition switch.

If the vehicle battery is flat, start the vehicle using jump leads. See *Jump Starting* ⇨ *262*.

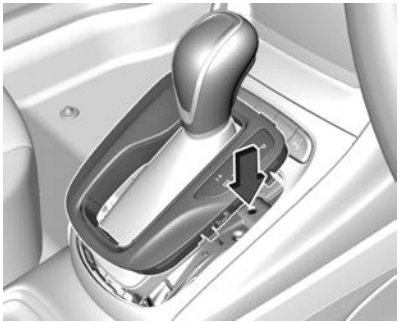
If the vehicle battery is not the cause of the fault, release the shift lever as follows.

1. Apply the parking brake.

2. Release the rear of the shift lever trim from the centre console.

   Insert a finger into the leather pocket below the shift lever and lift the trim upwards.

   Rotate the trim to the left.



3. Insert an object such as a pen or screwdriver into the opening near the shift lever.

   Push down to disengage the locking mechanism and move the shift lever out of **P**.

   If this position is engaged again, the shift lever will be locked again. Have the cause of the power supply interruption rectified by a dealer.

4. Place the shift lever trim into position on the centre console and refit.

Brakes

The brake system comprises two independent brake circuits.

If a brake circuit fails, the vehicle can still be braked using the other brake circuit. However, braking effect is achieved only when the brake pedal is pressed firmly. Considerably more force is needed for this and the braking distance is extended. Seek the assistance of a dealer before continuing the journey.

When the engine is not running, the support of the brake servo unit remains only for a few brake pedal applications. Braking effect is not reduced, but braking requires significantly greater force. If a problem is detected, (!) illuminates in the instrument cluster.

Antilock Brake System (ABS)

The Antilock Brake System (ABS) prevents the wheels from locking.

ABS starts to regulate brake pressure as soon as a wheel shows a tendency to lock. The vehicle remains controllable, even during hard braking.

⚠ Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. You should always adjust the vehicle's speed to suit road and traffic conditions. Always maintain an adequate distance to the vehicle in front of you.

ABS control is made apparent through a pulse in the brake pedal and the noise of the regulation process. For optimum braking, keep the brake pedal fully depressed throughout the braking process, despite the fact that the pedal is pulsating. Do not reduce the pressure on the pedal.

After starting off, the system performs a self-test which may be audible.

⚠ Warning

When the ignition is turned on, the (ABS) warning light briefly illuminates. The self-check of the ABS may be audible.

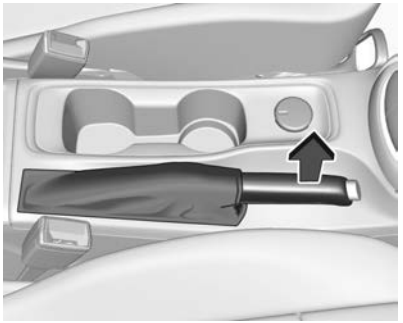
If the (ABS) warning light (ABS off) on the instrument panel display does not extinguish, or illuminates when driving, a malfunction has occurred.

Note: The vehicle's brake system remains operational, but without ABS assistance. Have a Holden Dealer check the system as soon as possible.

Adaptive Brake Light

During full braking, all three brake lights flash for the duration of ABS control.

Parking Brake



Applying the parking brake:

1. Apply the parking brake firmly without engaging the release button, and apply as firmly as possible when on an uphill or downhill gradient.

Releasing the parking brake:

1. Pull the lever slightly upwards.
2. Pull the lever up slightly, press the release button on the top of the lever and lower the lever all the way down.

To reduce operating forces, press the brake pedal at the same time.

⚠ Warning

Never drive the vehicle with the parking brake applied.

Electric Parking Brake

The vehicle may have an Electric Parking Brake (EPB).

Before turning the ignition off and leaving the vehicle, always check (P) is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

Applying When the Vehicle is Stationary

Press the brake pedal and pull the EPB switch for a minimum of one second until Ⓟ illuminates constantly and the parking brake is applied. The parking brake operates automatically with adequate force.

The EPB can always be activated, even if the ignition is off. Do not operate the EPB system too often without the engine running as this will discharge the vehicle battery.

⚠ Warning

If the EPB fails to apply, the rear wheels should be blocked to prevent vehicle movement.

Releasing

Turn the ignition on. Keep the brake pedal pressed and then push the EPB switch.

Drive Away Function

Selecting **D** (Drive) and then pressing the accelerator pedal releases the parking brake automatically.

This is not possible when the EPB switch is pulled at the same time.

Dynamic Braking When the Vehicle is Moving

When the vehicle is moving and the EPB switch is kept pulled, the parking brake system will decelerate the vehicle, but will not apply statically.

As soon as the switch is released, dynamic braking will cease.

Automatic Applying

If the vehicle is equipped with adaptive cruise control, when the adaptive cruise control is active the EPB is applied automatically when vehicle is stopped by the system for more than two minutes.

The parking brake releases automatically after moving off.

See *Adaptive Cruise Control* ⇨ *198*.

Functionality Check

When the vehicle is not moving, the EPB might be applied automatically. This is done to check the system.

Fault

If Ⓟ flashes, the EPB is not fully applied or released. When continuously flashing, release the EPB and retry applying.

Failure mode of the EPB is indicated by Ⓟ illuminating in the instrument cluster and by a message displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

- To apply the EPB: Pull and hold the switch for more than five seconds. If Ⓟ illuminates, the parking brake is applied.
- To release the EPB: Push and hold the switch for more than two seconds. If Ⓟ extinguishes, the parking brake is released.

Brake Assist

If the brake pedal is pressed quickly and forcefully, maximum braking force is automatically applied.

Operation of the brake assist might become apparent by a pulse in the brake pedal and a greater resistance when pressing the brake pedal.

Maintain steady pressure on the brake pedal as long as full braking is required. Maximum brake force is automatically reduced when brake pedal is released.

⚠ Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. The vehicle's speed should always be adjusted to suit road and traffic conditions. Always maintain an adequate distance to the vehicle in front of you.

Hill Start Assist (HSA)

The system helps prevent unintended movement when driving away on inclines.

When releasing the brake pedal after stopping on an incline, the brakes remain on for a further two seconds. The brakes release automatically as soon as the vehicle begins to accelerate.

Ride Control Systems

Traction Control System (TCS)

The Traction Control (TC) system is a component of the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system.

TC improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tyre grip, by preventing the drive wheels from spinning.

As soon as the drive wheels start to spin, engine output is reduced and the wheel spinning the most is braked separately. This considerably improves the driving stability of the vehicle on slippery road surfaces.

TC is operational after each engine start, as soon as illuminates in the instrument cluster.

When TC operates flashes for as long as control is being applied.

⚠ Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. The vehicle's speed should always be adjusted to suit road and traffic conditions.

Deactivation

TC can be switched off when spinning of the drive wheels is required: Press the switch briefly.

illuminates in the instrument cluster and a status message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre when TC is deactivated.

When TC is deactivated, ESC remains active but with a higher control threshold.

TC is reactivated by pressing the switch again. A status message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre when TC is reactivated.

TC is also reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

Fault

If there is a fault in the system illuminates continuously and a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. The system is not operational.

Have the cause of the fault rectified by a dealer.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tyre grip.

As soon as the vehicle starts to swerve (understeer or oversteer), engine output is reduced and the wheels are braked individually.

ESC operates in combination with the Traction Control (TC) system. It prevents the drive wheels from spinning.

Torque distribution is a special feature that allocates the torque to the drive wheels before the ESC intervenes. When cornering, the wheels on the inner curve are braked individually. Additionally, engine torque will be delivered to the drive wheel on the outer curve. This reduces the tendency of understeer and improves traction when cornering fast.

ESC is operational after each engine start, as soon as extinguishes in the instrument cluster. When ESC operates flashes.

⚠ Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. The vehicle's speed should always be adjusted to suit road and traffic conditions.

Deactivation

ESC and TC can be deactivated:

- Press and hold the switch for a minimum of five seconds: TC and ESC are both deactivated.

  and illuminate in the instrument cluster and messages are displayed in the Driver Information Centre.
- To deactivate only the traction control, press the switch briefly: TC is inactive but ESC remains active.

illuminates in the instrument cluster and a status message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

ESC is reactivated by pressing the switch again. If the TC system was previously disabled, both TC and ESC are reactivated. and extinguish when TC and ESC are reactivated.

ESC is also reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

Fault

If there is a fault in the system illuminates continuously and a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. The system is not operational.

Have the cause of the fault rectified by a dealer.

Sport Mode

Sport mode adapts the settings of some vehicle systems to a sportier driving style.

Activation

Press **SPORT** when engine is running. A LED in the button illuminates when sport mode is active and a status message appears in the Driver Information Centre.

⚠ Warning

Do not let this special feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

responsible driving style. The vehicle's speed should always be adjusted to suit road and traffic conditions.

Deactivation

Briefly press **SPORT**. Sport mode is also deactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

Driver Assistance Systems

This vehicle may have features that work together to help avoid crashes or reduce crash damage while driving, reversing, and parking. Please read this entire section to gain a full understanding of their capabilities and limitations before using these systems.

⚠ Warning

Do not rely on the Driver Assistance Systems. These systems do not replace the need for paying attention and driving safely. You may not hear alerts or warnings provided by these systems. Failure to use proper care when driving may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage.

Under many conditions, these systems will not:

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, or animals.
- Detect vehicles or objects outside the area monitored by the system.
- Work at all driving speeds.
- Warn you or provide you with enough time to avoid a crash.
- Work under poor visibility or bad weather conditions.
- Work if the detection sensor is not cleaned or is covered by ice, snow, mud, or dirt.
- Work if the detection sensor is covered, such as with a sticker, magnet, etc.
- Work if the area surrounding the detection sensor is damaged or not properly repaired.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Complete attention is always required while driving, and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes and/or steer the vehicle to avoid crashes.

Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

The rear vision camera assists the driver when reversing by displaying a view of the area behind the vehicle on the infotainment system display.

⚠ Warning

Never rely solely on the rear vision camera when reversing the vehicle.

There is a blind spot that cannot be sensed by the camera.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

The rear vision camera is not intended to replace the driver's judgement or attention to the rear of the vehicle when reversing.

Before entering the vehicle always check that the area around the vehicle is clear of obstacles and people.

Always perform head checks and use the vehicle's mirrors when reversing.

If the vehicle sustains any damage in the area of the camera (rear number plate surround), it may become misaligned. Contact a Holden Dealer.

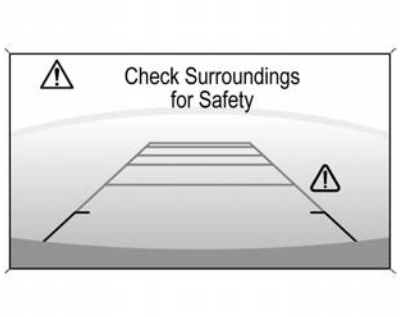
Always keep the camera lens free from dirt, snow or ice. Only use mild soap and water with a soft cloth to clean the lens.

Activation

The rear vision camera is automatically activated when reverse gear is engaged.

Functionality

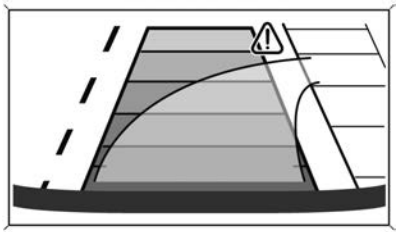
The camera is mounted between the rear number plate lights.



The area displayed by the camera is limited. The distance of the image that appears on the display differs from the actual distance.

Guide Lines

Dynamic guide lines are horizontal lines at one metre intervals projected onto the display to define the distance to displayed objects.



The trajectory lane of the vehicle is shown in accordance with the steering angle.

Warning Symbols

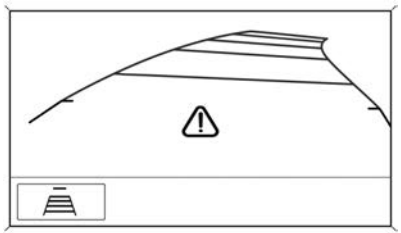
Warning symbols ⚠ are indicated on the display which show obstacles detected by the rear parking assist sensors.

Additionally ⚠ appears on the top line of the display with the warning to check the area surrounding the vehicle.

Deactivation

The camera is switched off when a certain forward speed is exceeded, or approx. 15 seconds after shifting out of reverse gear and the vehicle is stationary. The infotainment system display returns to the previous screen.

Deactivation of Guide Lines and Warning Symbols



Depending on model, activation or deactivation of the visual guide lines and the warning symbols can be changed by touching the Guide lines symbol on the display, or in the Settings menu in the infotainment system. See *Settings* ⇨ *137*.

System Limitations

The rear vision camera may not operate properly when:

- The surrounding is dark.
- The sun or headlight beams is/ are shining directly into the camera lens.
- When driving at night.
- The weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow.
- The camera lens is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt. Clean the lens, rinse with water, and wipe with a soft cloth.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.
- The vehicle has had a rear end collision.
- There are extreme temperature changes.

Fault messages are displayed with ⚠ on the top line of the infotainment system display.

Parking Assist

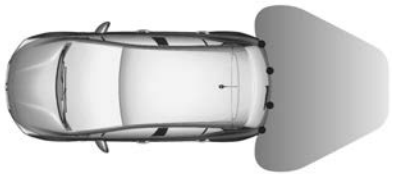
Rear Parking Assist

⚠ Warning

The driver bears full responsibility for the parking manoeuvre.

Always check the surrounding area when reversing or driving forward while using parking assist system.

The rear parking assist measures the distance between the vehicle and obstacles behind the vehicle. It informs and warns the driver by giving acoustic signals and display indications.



The system has four ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear bumper.

Activation

The system is activated automatically once the ignition is turned on.

An illuminated LED in the parking assist button P indicates the system is ready to operate.

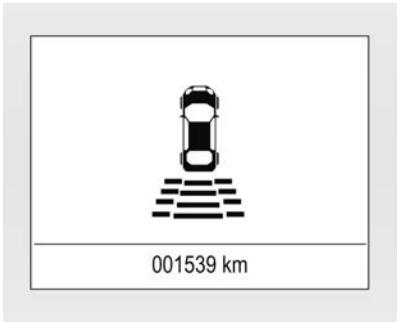
Indication

The system warns the driver with acoustic signals against potentially hazardous obstacles behind the vehicle within a distance of up to 50 cm while a forward gear is engaged, or up to 1.5 m while reverse gear is engaged.

Depending on which side of the vehicle is closer to the obstacle, the acoustic warning signals sound in the vehicle on that side.

The interval between the sounds becomes shorter as the vehicle moves closer to that obstacle. When the distance is less than approx. 30 cm, the sound is continuous.

Additionally, the distance to rear obstacles is displayed by changing distance lines in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).



The distance indication can be inhibited by vehicle messages with a higher priority. After dismissing the message, distance indication appears again.

Deactivation

Manual deactivation is also possible by pressing the parking assist button P. The LED in the button extinguishes.

Fault

In the event of a fault or if the system does not work temporarily, e.g. because of high external noise level or other interference factors, the LED in the button flashes for three seconds and then extinguishes. A message is displayed in the DIC.

Front-rear Parking Assist

⚠ Warning

The driver bears full responsibility for the parking manoeuvre.

Always check the surrounding area when reversing or driving forward while using parking assist system.

The front-rear parking assist measures the distance between the vehicle and obstacles in front of and behind the vehicle. It informs and warns the driver by giving acoustic signals and display indications.

Two different acoustic warning signals are sounded for the front and rear monitoring areas, each with a different tone frequency.

The system has four ultrasonic parking sensors each in the rear and front bumper.

Activation

When reverse gear is selected, the front and rear parking assist is ready to operate. The front parking assist is also activated automatically at a speed up to 11 km/h.

An illuminated LED in the parking assist button P indicates the system is ready to operate. If P is switched off within an ignition cycle, the front parking assist is deactivated. If vehicle speed has exceeded 25 km/h beforehand, parking assist will be reactivated when speed drops below 11 km/h.

When the system is deactivated, the LED in the button extinguishes and a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

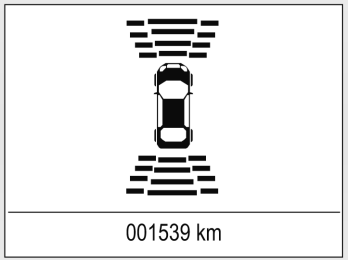
Indication

The system warns the driver with acoustic signals against potentially hazardous obstacles in front of the vehicle within a distance of up to 80 cm and behind the vehicle within a distance of up to 50 cm while a forward gear is engaged, or up to 1.5 m while reverse gear is engaged.

Depending on which side of the vehicle is closer to the obstacle, the acoustic warning signals sound in the vehicle on that side.

The interval between the sounds becomes shorter as the vehicle moves closer to that obstacle. When the distance is less than approx. 30 cm, the sound is continuous.

Additionally, the distance to rear and front obstacles is displayed by changing distance lines in the DIC.



The distance indication can be inhibited by vehicle messages with a higher priority. After dismissing the message, distance indication appears again.

Deactivation

The rear parking assist automatically switches off when reverse gear is disengaged. The front parking assist is deactivated automatically when vehicle speed exceeds 11 km/h. Manual deactivation is also possible by pressing the parking assist button P.

When the system is deactivated manually, the LED in the button extinguishes and a message is displayed in the DIC.

After a manual deactivation, the front-rear parking assist is activated again if P is pressed or if reverse gear is engaged.

The complete system can be manually deactivated in the vehicle personalisation menu in the infotainment system. It remains deactivated during the ignition cycle or until reactivated.

See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *87*.

Fault

In the event of a fault or if the system does not work temporarily, e.g. because of high external noise level or other interference factors, a message is displayed in the DIC.

Notes on the Parking Assist Systems

⚠ Warning

Under certain circumstances, various reflective surfaces on objects or clothing, as well as external noise sources may cause the system to fail to detect obstacles.

Special attention must be paid to low obstacles which can damage the lower part of the vehicle.

Caution

Performance of the system can be reduced when sensors are covered, e.g. by ice or snow.

Performance of the parking assist system can be reduced due to heavy loading of the vehicle.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

Special conditions apply if there are taller vehicles in the vicinity, e.g. off-road vehicles or trucks, etc. Object identification and correct distance indication in the upper part of these vehicles cannot be guaranteed.

Objects with a very small reflection cross-section, e.g. objects of narrow size or soft materials, may not be detected by the system.

Parking assist systems do not detect objects outside the detection range.

A sensor may detect a non-existing object caused by echo disturbance from external acoustic noise or mechanical misalignments; sporadic false warnings may occur.

For vehicles with front parking assist, make sure the front number plate is correctly mounted, not bent and there are no gaps to the bumper fascia on either side.

Also ensure the front and rear bumper fascias are not damaged.

Towing

When attaching a trailer or bike carrier, etc., with an electrical connection, the parking assist may be deactivated.

A message may be displayed advising this once the vehicle speed has exceeded 75 km/h and then returned to below 11 km/h.

Adjustment of the detection area may be available if a towbar is fitted. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *87*.

Advanced Parking Assist

The advanced parking assist system measures a suitable parking spot while passing, calculates the trajectory and automatically steers the vehicle into a parallel or perpendicular parking spot.

Instructions are given in the infotainment system display. Instructions are supported by acoustic signals. The driver must control acceleration and gear shifting, while steering is done automatically.

⚠ Warning

The driver bears full responsibility for accepting the parking spot suggested by the system and the parking manoeuvre.

Always check the surrounding area in all directions when using the advanced parking assist.

Advanced parking assist is combined with the front-rear parking assist. Both systems use the same sensors in the front and rear bumpers, however vehicles with advanced parking assist have six ultrasonic parking sensors in each bumper.

Activation

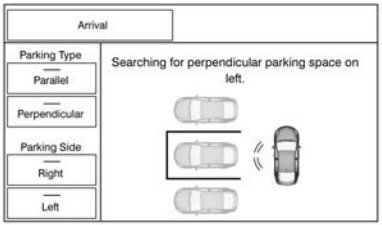
Advanced parking assist can only be activated when driving forwards.

When searching for a parking spot, the system is ready to operate with a short press of P. The system detects ten metres for parallel parking spots or six metres for perpendicular parking spots when in advanced parking assist mode.

The system can only be activated at a speed up to 30 km/h and the system searches for a parking spot at a speed up to 30 km/h.

The maximum allowed parallel distance between the vehicle and a row of parked cars is 1.8 metres for parallel parking and 2.5 metres for perpendicular parking.

Parking Spot Search Mode



When activated, the system will search for a perpendicular parking spot on the left by default. To search for a parallel spot, or a spot on the opposite side, touch the desired on-screen button.

When a spot is detected, a visual feedback in the infotainment display and an acoustic signal is given.

Park Guiding Mode

The parking spot suggestion of the system is accepted when the vehicle is stopped by the driver within ten metres for parallel parking

spots or six metres for perpendicular parking spots, after the STOP message is given.

The system calculates the optimal path into the parking spot.

A brief vibration in the steering wheel after engaging reverse gear indicates the steering is controlled by the system.

The vehicle is steered into the spot automatically by providing the driver detailed instructions for braking, accelerating and shifting forward or reversing.

The driver must keep hands away from the steering wheel.

Always pay attention to the sound of the front-rear parking assist. A continuous sound indicates the distance to an obstacle is less than approx. 30 cm.

If, for any reason, the driver must take over control of the steering, hold the steering wheel only at the outer edge. Automatic steering is cancelled in this event.

Display Indication

The instructions on the display show:

- General hints and warning messages.
- Advice to reduce speed if driving faster than 30 km/h during parking spot searching mode.
- The command to stop the vehicle when a parking spot is detected.
- The direction of driving during the parking manoeuvre.
- The commands to shift into **R** or **D**.
- The command to brake or accelerate.
- For some instructions a progress bar is shown.
- The successful completion of the parking manoeuvre indicated by a message symbol and a chime.
- The cancelling of a parking manoeuvre.

Deactivation

The system is deactivated by:

- A short press of P.
- Parking manoeuvre successfully ended.
- Driving faster than 30 km/h during a parking spot search.
- Driving faster than 8 km/h during a parking guidance.
- Driver interference on the steering wheel detected.
- Exceeding the maximum number of gear changes: eight cycles when parallel parking or five cycles when perpendicular parking.
- Turning the ignition off.

Deactivation by the driver or by the system during manoeuvring will be indicated by a message being displayed. Additionally, an acoustic signal sounds.

Fault

A message is displayed when:

- There is a fault in the system.

- The driver did not successfully complete the parking manoeuvre.
- The system is not operational.
- Any of the deactivation reasons described above apply.

If an object is detected during parking instructions, STOP is indicated on the display. Removing the object will resume the parking manoeuvre. If the object is not removed, the system will be deactivated. A long press of P will activate the system and search for a new parking spot.

Notes on the Advanced Parking Assist System

⚠ Warning

Under certain circumstances, various reflective surfaces on objects or clothing, as well as external noise sources may cause the system to fail to detect obstacles.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Special attention must be paid to low obstacles which can damage the lower part of the vehicle.

Caution

Performance of the system can be reduced when sensors are covered, e.g. by ice or snow.

Performance of the parking assist system can be reduced due to heavy loading of the vehicle.

Special conditions apply if there are taller vehicles in the vicinity, e.g. off-road vehicles or trucks, etc. Object identification and correct distance indication in the upper part of these vehicles cannot be guaranteed.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

Objects with a very small reflection cross-section, e.g. objects of narrow size or soft materials, may not be detected by the system.

Parking assist systems do not detect objects outside the detection range.

A sensor may detect a non-existing object caused by echo disturbance from external acoustic noise or mechanical misalignments; sporadic false warnings may occur.

Make sure the front number plate is correctly mounted, not bent and there are no gaps to the bumper fascia on either side. Also ensure the front and rear bumper fascias are not damaged.

The advanced parking assist system may not respond to changes in the available parking space after initiating a parking manoeuvre.

The system may recognise an entry, a gateway, a courtyard or even a crossing as a parking spot.

After selecting reverse gear the system will start a parking manoeuvre. Take care regarding the availability of the suggested parking spot.

Low curbs and surface irregularities are not detected by the system. The driver accepts responsibility.

Note

New vehicles require a calibration during first use. For optimal parking guidance, a driving distance of at least 10 km, including a number of bends, is required.

The system is calibrated for factory-fitted wheels. Parking performance is altered with other tyre or wheel sizes.

Cruise Control

The cruise control system can store and maintain speeds from approx. 30 km/h to the maximum vehicle speed.

Deviations from the stored speeds may occur when driving uphill or downhill. It is the responsibility of the driver to comply with local posted speed limits. Activating in first gear is not possible.

⚠ Warning

Do not use the cruise control when road or driving conditions require varying speeds.
A constant speed is not practical in heavy or varying traffic or on winding, slippery or rough roads.

Remember that when illuminates green, the cruise control is maintaining the vehicle's speed. Taking your foot off the accelerator pedal does not reduce the speed. To deactivate the cruise control, press the brake pedal or push .

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

The cruise control does not apply the vehicle's brakes. The vehicle may gain speed when going down steep hills.

When climbing steep hills (particularly when towing), the vehicle may lose speed. In this case, use the accelerator pedal. Release the accelerator pedal when the speed returns to the set speed.

The cruise control is cancelled if Traction Control (TC) or Electronic Stability Control (ESC) becomes active, indicated by flashing on the instrument panel display.

Switching On

The cruise control switches are located on the steering wheel and vary depending on vehicle model. Operation is the same.

Press on the steering wheel. illuminates white in the instrument cluster.

Activation

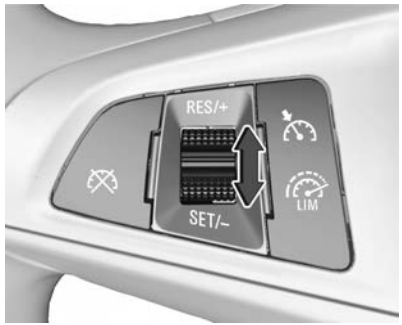
Accelerate to the desired speed above 30 km/h and turn the steering wheel thumb wheel to **SET/-**. The current speed is stored and maintained. illuminates green in the instrument cluster. On some models the set speed is also indicated.

The accelerator pedal can be released.

Vehicle speed can be temporarily increased by pressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the previously stored speed is resumed.

Cruise control remains activated while shifting gears.

Increase Speed



With cruise control active, hold the steering wheel thumb wheel turned to **RES/+** or briefly turn to **RES/+** repeatedly. Vehicle speed increases continuously or in small increments.

Alternatively, accelerate to the desired speed and store by turning to **SET/-**.

Reduce Speed

With cruise control active, hold the steering wheel thumb wheel turned to **SET/-** or briefly turn to **SET/-**

repeatedly. Vehicle speed decreases continuously or in small increments.

Deactivation

Press on the steering wheel. illuminates white in the instrument cluster.

The cruise control is deactivated, but not switched off. The last stored speed remains in memory.

Automatic Deactivation

The cruise control may automatically deactivate when:

- Vehicle speed is below approx. 30 km/h.
- Vehicle speed drops more than 25 km/h below the set speed.
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- The shift lever is in N.
- Engine speed is in a very low range.
- The Traction Control (TC) system or Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is operating.
- The parking brake is applied.
- Simultaneously pressing **RES/+** and the brake pedal deactivates the cruise control and will delete the stored speed.

Resume Stored Speed

If the cruise control system has not been turned off since it was last set, turn the steering wheel thumb wheel to **RES/+** at a speed above 30 km/h. The stored speed will be returned.

Switching Off

Press on the steering wheel. extinguishes in the instrument cluster. The stored speed is deleted. Pressing LIM on the steering wheel to activate the speed limiter, or turning the ignition off also switches the cruise control off and deletes the stored speed.

Speed Limiter

The speed limiter prevents the vehicle exceeding a preset maximum speed.

Maximum speed can be set at speeds above 25 km/h. The driver can only accelerate up to the preset speed. Deviations from the limited speed may occur when driving downhill.

The preset speed limit is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) when the system is active.

Activation

The speed limiter switches are located on the steering wheel and vary depending on vehicle model. Operation is the same.

Press LIM on the steering wheel. LIM illuminates in the DIC.

If cruise control has been activated previously, it is switched off when the speed limiter is activated and extinguishes.

Set Limited Speed

Accelerate to the desired speed and briefly turn the steering wheel thumbwheel to **SET/-**. The current speed is stored as the vehicle maximum speed. Depending on vehicle model, LIM and the speed limit is displayed, or LIM changes to green.

Change Limited Speed

With the speed limiter active, hold or briefly turn the steering wheel thumbwheel to **RES/+** to increase, or **SET/-** to decrease the desired maximum speed.

Exceeding Limited Speed

When exceeding the limited speed without driver input, the speed will flash in the DIC and a chime sounds during this period.

In the event of an emergency, it is possible to exceed the speed limit by pressing the accelerator pedal firmly to near fully pressed. In this case no chime appears.

Release the accelerator pedal and the speed limiter function is reactivated once a speed lower than the limit speed is obtained.

Deactivation

Press on the steering wheel. The speed limiter is deactivated and the vehicle can be driven without speed limit.

Depending on vehicle model the stored limited speed is indicated in brackets or LIM changes to white.

Additionally, a corresponding message is displayed. The speed limiter is deactivated, but not switched off and the last stored speed remains in memory.

Resume Limited Speed

Turn the steering wheel thumbwheel to **RES/+**.

The stored speed limit will be obtained and is indicated without brackets in the DIC.

Switching Off

Press LIM on the steering wheel. The speed limit indication extinguishes in the DIC and the stored speed is deleted.

By pressing on the steering wheel to activate cruise control or adaptive cruise control, the speed limiter is also deactivated and the stored speed is deleted.

Turning the ignition off also deactivates the speed limiter, but the speed limit will be stored for next speed limiter activation.

Adaptive Cruise Control

If equipped, adaptive cruise control is an enhancement to conventional cruise control with the additional feature of maintaining a certain distance behind the vehicle ahead.

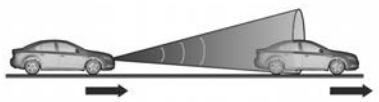
Adaptive cruise control automatically decelerates the vehicle when approaching a slower moving vehicle. It then adjusts the vehicle speed to follow the vehicle ahead at the selected following distance.

The vehicle speed increases or decreases to follow the vehicle in front, but will not exceed the set speed. It may apply limited braking with activated brake lights.

The adaptive cruise control can store and maintain speeds over approx. 25 km/h. If following a vehicle ahead driving slower than 25 km/h, the slower speed will be set.

The system can also brake the vehicle to a stop and continue when the vehicle ahead moves off.

It is the responsibility of the driver to comply with local posted speed limits and maintain control of the vehicle at all times.



Adaptive cruise control uses radar and camera sensors to detect the vehicles ahead. If no vehicle is detected in the driving path, the adaptive cruise control will behave like a conventional cruise control.

For safety reasons, the system cannot be activated before the brake pedal has been depressed once since the ignition was turned on.

Adaptive cruise control is designed to be used on long straight roads such as highways or country roads with steady traffic. Do not use the system if it is not advisable to maintain a constant speed.

⚠ Warning

Complete driver attention is always required while driving with adaptive cruise control.

The driver remains fully in control of the vehicle because the brake pedal, the accelerator pedal and the cancel switch have priority over any adaptive cruise control operation.

Switching On

Press on the steering wheel to switch on adaptive cruise control. is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

Activation by Setting the Speed

Adaptive cruise control can be activated at speeds above 25 km/h. It is the responsibility of the driver to comply with local posted speed limits.

Accelerate to the desired speed and turn the steering wheel thumb wheel to **SET/-**. The current speed is stored and maintained.

The adaptive cruise control symbol, the following distance setting and the set speed are indicated in the DIC. The accelerator pedal can be released.

Adaptive cruise control remains activated during gear shifting.

Overriding Set Speed

It is possible to drive faster than the selected set speed by depressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle returns to the desired distance if a slower vehicle is ahead. Otherwise it returns to the stored speed.

Once the system is activated, adaptive cruise control decelerates or brakes if it detects a vehicle ahead which is slower or closer than the desired following distance.

⚠ Warning

The system temporarily deactivates automatic braking when the set speed is overridden by pressing the accelerator pedal. This is indicated as a warning in the Driver Information Centre or by turning blue.

Increase Speed

With adaptive cruise control active, hold **RES/+** to increase speed continuously. Push **RES/+** repeatedly to increase speed in small increments.

If the vehicle is driven with adaptive cruise control in active mode much faster than the desired speed, e.g. after pressing the accelerator pedal,

then the current speed can be stored and maintained by turning the thumb wheel to **SET/-**.

Reduce Speed

With adaptive cruise control active, hold **SET/-** to decrease speed continuously. Push **SET/-** repeatedly to decrease speed in small increments.

If the vehicle is driven with adaptive cruise control in active mode much slower than the desired speed, e.g. because of a slower vehicle ahead, then the current speed can be stored and maintained by turning the thumb wheel to **SET/-**.

Resume Stored Speed

If the system is switched on but inactive and a speed was stored before, turn the thumb wheel on the steering wheel to **RES/+** at a speed above 25 km/h to resume the stored speed.

Full Speed Range Adaptive Cruise Control

The adaptive cruise control will maintain a following gap behind a detected vehicle and slow your vehicle to a stop behind that vehicle.

In case of a brief stop of the vehicle ahead, the adaptive cruise control will resume automatically without driver action. If necessary on some versions, press **RES/+** or the accelerator pedal to resume adaptive cruise control.

If the stopped vehicle ahead was stopped for a longer time and then begins to move forward, the green illuminated vehicle ahead control indicator will flash and a warning chime will sound as a reminder to check traffic before proceeding.

When the vehicle ahead drives away, press **RES+** or the accelerator pedal to resume adaptive cruise control. If stopped for more than two minutes or if the driver's door is opened and the driver's seat belt is unbuckled, the electric parking brake is applied automatically to hold the vehicle. Ⓟ will illuminate. To release electric parking brake press the accelerator pedal.

⚠ Warning

When adaptive cruise control is deactivated or cancelled, the vehicle will no longer be held at a stop and can start moving. Always be prepared to manually apply the brake pedal to hold the vehicle stationary.

Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held at a stop by the adaptive cruise control. Always move the shift lever to P (Park) and turn the ignition off before leaving the vehicle.

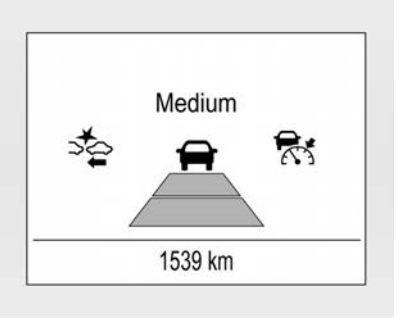
Setting the Following Distance

When adaptive cruise control detects a slower moving vehicle in the driving path, it will adjust the

vehicle speed to maintain the following distance selected by the driver.

The following distance can be set to near, medium or far.

Press on the steering wheel. The current setting is shown in the DIC. Press again repeatedly to change the following distance. The setting is also displayed in the DIC.



The selected following distance is indicated by filled distance bars in the adaptive cruise control page.

Note

The following distance setting is shared with the sensitivity setting of Forward Collision Alert. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *205*.

Example: If the far setting is selected, then the driver is warned sooner before a possible collision.

⚠ Warning

The Driver accepts full responsibility to drive with the appropriate following distance based on traffic, weather, visibility and traffic regulations.

The following distance must be adjusted or the system switched off if required by the prevailing conditions.

Detecting the Vehicle Ahead

The green illuminated vehicle ahead indicator is displayed when the system detects a vehicle in the driving path at a distance of up to 150 metres.

If this symbol does not display, or displays briefly, the adaptive cruise control will not respond to vehicles ahead.

Deactivation

Adaptive cruise control is deactivated by the driver when:

- on the steering wheel is pressed.
- The brake pedal is applied.
- The shift lever is moved to **N** (Neutral).

The system is also automatically deactivated when:

- Vehicle speed is above 190 km/h or slows to below 15 km/h. It slows to a stop without deactivating within two minutes.
- The Traction Control (TC) system is deactivated or the system is operating.
- The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is deactivated or the system is operating.
- There is no traffic and nothing detected on the road sides for approx. one minute. In this case there are no radar echoes and the sensor may report that it is blocked.
- The active emergency braking system is applying the brakes.
- Driving on steep inclines.
- The radar sensor is blocked by an ice or water film.
- A fault is detected in the radar, camera, engine or brake system.

Additionally, the system is automatically deactivated on vehicles with full speed range adaptive cruise control:

- The electric parking brake is applied.
- The vehicle is being held to a stop by the system for more than two minutes.
- The vehicle stops, the driver's seat belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is opened.

When adaptive cruise control is deactivated, changes from green to white and a message is displayed in the DIC. The stored speed is maintained.

changes from green to white when the system is deactivated but not switched off.

⚠ Warning

When adaptive cruise control is deactivated, the driver must take over full braking and engine control immediately.

Switching Off

Press on the steering wheel to switch off the adaptive cruise control. extinguishes in the DIC and the stored speed is deleted.

Turning the ignition off also switches off the adaptive cruise control and deletes the stored speed.

Driver's Attention

- Use adaptive cruise control carefully on bends or mountain roads, as it can lose the vehicle ahead and needs time to detect it again.
- Do not use the system on slippery roads as it can create rapid changes in tyre traction (wheel spinning), resulting in loss of control of the vehicle.

- Do not use adaptive cruise control during rain, snow or on dirt roads, as the radar sensor can be covered by a water film, dust, ice or snow. This reduces or suppresses completely the visibility. In case of sensor blockage, clean the sensor cover.

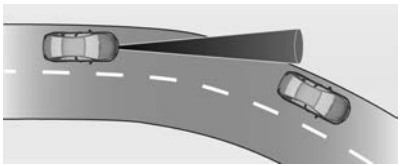
System Limitations

⚠ Warning

The system's automatic brake force does not permit hard braking. Therefore the braking level may not be sufficient to avoid a collision.

- After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle. If a new vehicle is detected, the system may accelerate instead of braking.
- Adaptive cruise control does ignore the oncoming traffic.
- Adaptive cruise control does not brake for pedestrians, animals, very slow speed driving or stopped vehicles.
- Do not use adaptive cruise control when towing a trailer.
- Do not use adaptive cruise control on steep inclines.

Bends



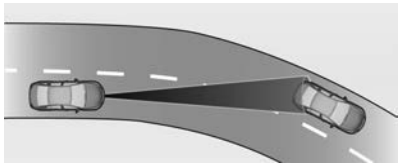
The adaptive cruise control calculates a predicted path based on centrifugal force. This predicted path considers the current bend characteristic, but cannot consider a future bend change.

The system may lose the current vehicle ahead or consider a vehicle which is not in the actual lane. This can happen when entering or exiting a bend or if the bend gets tighter or wider.

If a vehicle ahead is no longer detected will extinguish.

If the centrifugal force is too high in a bend, the system slows the vehicle slightly. This braking level is not designed to avoid spinning off the bend.

The driver is responsible for reducing the selected speed before entering a bend and in general to adapt the speed to the road type and to existing speed limits.



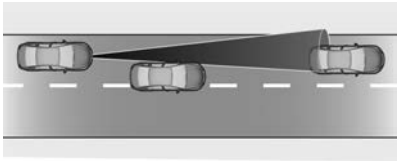
Freeways

On freeways, adapt the set speed to the situation and the weather. Always consider that adaptive cruise control has a limited visibility range, a limited braking level and a certain reaction time to verify if a vehicle is on the driving path or not.

Adaptive cruise control may not be able to brake the vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a much slower vehicle or after a lane change. This is particularly true while driving fast or if the visibility is reduced due to weather conditions.

While entering or exiting a freeway, adaptive cruise control may lose the vehicle ahead and accelerate up to the set speed. For this reason, decrease the set speed before the exit or before the entry.

Vehicle Path Change



If another vehicle enters your driving path, adaptive cruise control will first consider the vehicle when it is completely in your path. Be ready to take action and press the brake pedal, if you need to brake more quickly.

Hill Considerations

⚠ Warning

Do not use adaptive cruise control on roads with steep hills.

System performance on hills depends on vehicle speed, vehicle load, traffic conditions and the road gradient. It may not detect a vehicle in your path while driving on hills.

On steep hills, you may have to use the accelerator pedal to maintain your vehicle speed. When going downhill you may have to brake to maintain or reduce your speed.

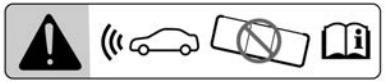
Note

Applying the brakes deactivates the system.

Radar Sensor

Vehicles with adaptive cruise control are equipped with a radar sensor which is located below the mounting position for the front number plate.

The vehicle is supplied with a number plate mounting bracket to ensure the number plate does not interfere with the radar sensor's operation.



⚠ Warning

Do not remove the number plate mounting bracket on this vehicle for any reason. If the bracket is removed the radar sensor may not work as desired and the performance of the adaptive cruise control, autonomous emergency braking and forward collision alert systems (with radar) may be compromised.

Only use genuine Holden number plate surrounds specifically designed for this vehicle.

⚠ Warning

The radar sensor was aligned carefully during vehicle manufacture. In the event of a front-end impact the alignment may be compromised.
Do not rely on the system.

The front bumper may appear to be intact, however the radar sensor can be out of position and react incorrectly. After a collision, consult a dealer to verify and adjust the radar sensor position.

Settings

Adaptive cruise control settings can be changed in the vehicle personalisation menu. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *87*.

Fault

If the adaptive cruise control does not operate due to temporary conditions, e.g. blockage by ice, overheated brakes or low speed manoeuvres, etc., or if there is a permanent system error, a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System

Forward collision alert may help to avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end collisions.

If the vehicle is equipped with conventional cruise control, the forward collision alert uses the front camera in the windscreen to detect a vehicle in your path directly ahead. If the vehicle is equipped with adaptive cruise control, the forward collision alert uses the radar sensor and front camera to detect a vehicle in your path directly ahead.

A detected vehicle ahead is indicated by the vehicle ahead indicator. If a vehicle directly ahead is approached too quickly, a warning chime and alert in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) is provided. Additionally the driver is

notified by a flashing red LED stripe projected on to the windscreen in the driver's field of view.

A precondition is that forward collision alert is not deactivated.

Activation

- Forward collision alert with the front camera detects vehicles up to distances of approx. 60 metres and operates automatically at all speeds above walking speed.
- Forward collision alert with the radar sensor detects vehicles up to distances of approx. 150 metres and operates automatically at all speeds above walking speed.

Alerting the Driver

illuminates green in the instrument cluster when the system has detected a vehicle in the driving path.

changes to yellow when the distance to a preceding moving vehicle becomes small or if approaching another vehicle too rapidly.

⚠ Warning

FCA is a warning system only and does not apply the brakes.

When approaching a slower-moving or stopped vehicle ahead too rapidly, or when following a vehicle too closely, FCA may not provide a warning with enough time to help avoid a crash. It also may not provide any warning at all.

The FCA does not warn of pedestrians, animals, signs, guardrails, bridges, construction barrels, or other objects. Be ready to take action and apply the brakes.

The driver bears full responsibility for maintaining safe following distance according to applicable traffic rules, weather and road conditions, etc. at all times.

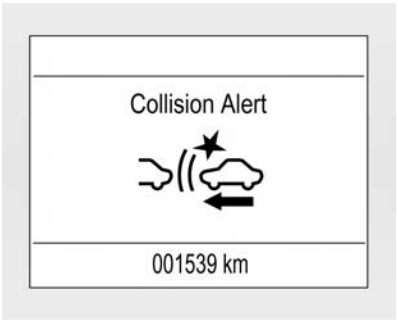
When the time to a potential collision with a preceding vehicle becomes too small and a collision is imminent, a collision alert symbol is displayed in the DIC.

The driver is also notified by a flashing red LED stripe projected on to the windscreen in the driver's field of view. Simultaneously a warning chime sounds.

Press the brake pedal and steer the vehicle as required by the situation.

Selecting Alert Sensitivity

Press on the steering wheel to set the alert sensitivity to near, medium or far and on some models, off.



The first button press displays the current setting on the DIC. Additional button presses will change this setting. The chosen setting will remain until it is changed.

The alert timing will vary based on vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle speed, the further away the alert will occur. Consider traffic and weather conditions when selecting the alert timing.

Note

The alert timing sensitivity setting is shared with the following distance setting of the adaptive cruise control, if equipped. Changing the

alert timing sensitivity changes the adaptive cruise control following distance setting.

Deactivation

The system can be deactivated.

For vehicles with forward collision alert with a radar sensor, the system can be deactivated in the Settings menu in the infotainment system. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *87*.

For vehicles with forward collision alert with a front camera, press ⁂ on the steering wheel repeatedly until Forward Collision Alert Off is displayed in the DIC.

If the forward collision alert was deactivated, alert sensitivity is set to Medium when the ignition is next turned on. The last selected setting will be stored when the ignition is switched off.

System Limitations

Forward collision alert is designed to provide a warning for vehicles only, but may react also to other objects.

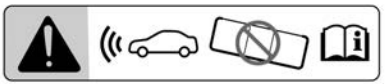
In the following cases, forward collision alert may not detect a vehicle ahead or sensor performance may be limited:

- Driving on winding or hilly roads.
- Where the weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow.
- The windscreen sensor is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, windscreen damage or is affected by foreign objects, e.g. stickers.

Radar Sensor

The forward collision alert system for vehicles with adaptive cruise control is equipped with a radar sensor which is located below the mounting position for the front number plate.

The vehicle is supplied with a number plate mounting bracket to ensure the number plate does not interfere with the radar sensor's operation.



⚠ Warning

Do not remove the number plate mounting bracket on this vehicle for any reason. If the bracket is removed the radar sensor may not work as desired and the performance of the adaptive cruise control, autonomous

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

emergency braking and forward collision alert systems (with radar) may be compromised.

Only use genuine Holden number plate surrounds specifically designed for this vehicle.

⚠ Warning

The radar sensor was aligned carefully during vehicle manufacture. In the event of a front-end impact the alignment may be compromised.
Do not rely on the system.

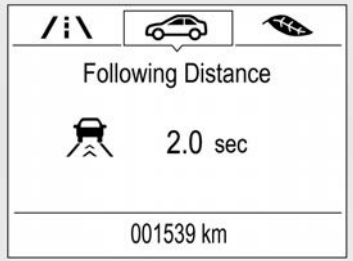
The front bumper may appear to be intact, however the radar sensor can be out of position and react incorrectly. After a collision, consult a dealer to verify and adjust the radar sensor position.

Following Distance Indication System

The following distance indication displays the distance to a preceding moving vehicle.

The front camera in the windscreen is used to detect the distance of a vehicle directly ahead in the vehicle's path. It is active at speeds above 40 km/h.

When a preceding vehicle is detected ahead, the distance is indicated in seconds and displayed on a page in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

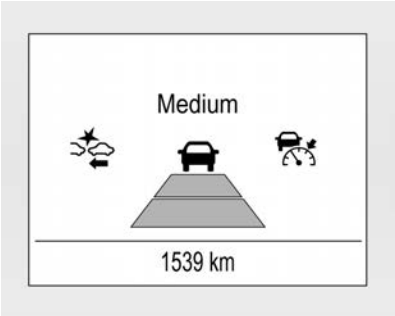


- For Type 1 displays: Select the Vehicle Information menu using the MENU button on the turn signal lever. Turn the adjuster wheel to choose Following Distance page.
- For Type 2 displays: Select the Info menu using the steering wheel buttons and press ▽ to scroll down to the Following Distance page.

For further information on using the DIC menus see *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *80*.

The minimum indicated distance is 0.5 seconds.

If there is no vehicle ahead or the vehicle ahead is out of range, two dashes will be displayed: -.- sec.



If the vehicle is equipped with adaptive cruise control and it is active, this page shows the alert sensitivity setting instead of following distance setting.

System Limitations

In the following cases, following distance indication sensor performance is limited:

- Driving on winding or hilly roads.
- Weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow.
- The sensor is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, windscreen damage or affected by foreign objects, e.g. stickers.

Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB)

Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) can help reduce damage and injury from collisions with vehicles and obstacles detected directly ahead, when a collision can no longer be avoided either by manual braking or by steering.

Before AEB applies, the driver is warned by the forward collision alert system. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *205*.

AEB uses various inputs, such as a camera sensor, radar sensor, brake pressure and vehicle speed, to calculate the probability of a frontal collision.

⚠ Warning

This system is not intended to replace the driver's responsibility for driving the vehicle and looking ahead. Its function is limited to supplemental use only to reduce the vehicle speed before a collision.

The system may not react to pedestrians or animals. After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle.

The driver must always be ready to take action and apply the brakes and steer to avoid collisions.

Functionality

If equipped only with the front camera, AEB operates in a forward gear above walking speed up to approx. 80 km/h.

For vehicles with a radar sensor, AEB operates in a forward gear above walking speed at all speeds.

A precondition is that forward collision alert with the front camera system is not deactivated.

The system includes:

- Brake preparation system.
- Emergency automatic braking.
- Forward looking brake assist.
- Intelligent brake assist (only with radar sensor).

Brake Preparation System

When approaching a vehicle ahead so quickly that a collision is likely, the brake preparation system slightly pressurises the brakes. This reduces the response time, when manual or automatic braking is requested.

The brake system is prepared so that braking can occur rapidly. If equipped only with front camera the system operates up to a speed of approx. 80 km/h.

Emergency Automatic Braking

After activation of brake preparation system and just before the imminent collision, this function automatically applies limited braking to reduce the impact speed of the collision, or prohibit a crash.

Depending on the situation, the vehicle may automatically brake moderately or hard.

This front automatic braking can only occur if a vehicle ahead is detected, indicated by the vehicle ahead indicator .

If equipped only with front camera, the system operates up to a speed of approx. 60 km/h. Below a speed of 40 km/h the system can apply full braking.

Emergency automatic braking may slow the vehicle to a complete stop to attempt to avoid a potential collision. If this happens, emergency automatic braking may engage the electric parking brake to hold the vehicle at a stop. To release, press the electric parking brake button or firmly press the accelerator pedal.

⚠ Warning

Emergency automatic braking is an emergency collision preparation feature and is not designed to avoid crashes. Do not rely on the system to brake the vehicle.

Emergency automatic braking will not brake outside of its operating speed range and only responds to detected vehicles.

Forward Looking Brake Assist

In addition to the brake preparation system and emergency automatic braking, the forward looking brake assist function increases brake sensitivity. Therefore, less brake pedal pressure is required to achieve immediate hard braking.

This function helps the driver brake faster and harder before the imminent collision.

If equipped with only a front camera, the system operates up to a speed of approx. 80 km/h.

⚠ Warning

Autonomous emergency braking is not designed to apply hard autonomous braking or to automatically avoid a collision. It is designed to reduce the vehicle speed before a collision. It may not react to pedestrians or animals. After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle.

The complete attention of the driver is always required while driving. The driver must always be ready to take action and apply the brakes and steer to avoid collisions.

The system is designed to work with all occupants wearing their seat belts.

Intelligent Brake Assist

If the vehicle is equipped with a radar sensor, intelligent brake assist may activate when the brake pedal is applied quickly by providing a boost to braking based on the speed of approach and distance to a vehicle ahead.

Minor brake pedal pulsations or pedal movement during this time are normal and the brake pedal should continue to be applied as needed. Intelligent brake assist will automatically disengage only when the brake pedal is released.

⚠ Warning

Intelligent brake assist may increase vehicle braking in situations when it may not be necessary. You could block the flow of traffic. If this occurs, take your foot off the brake pedal and then apply the brakes as needed.

Deactivation

For vehicles with a front camera, AEB can be deactivated by repeatedly pressing on the steering wheel to the Off setting. If deactivated a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

For vehicles with a radar sensor, AEB can be deactivated. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *87*. If deactivated a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

System Limitations

In some cases, the AEB system may provide automatic braking in situations that seem to be unnecessary, such as in parking garages, due to traffic signs in a curve or due to vehicles in another lane. This is normal operation; the vehicle does not need service.

Firmly apply the accelerator pedal to override the automatic braking if the situation and the surroundings permit.

In the following cases, AEB performance is limited:

- Driving on winding or hilly roads.
- Detecting all vehicles, especially vehicles with a trailer, tractors, muddy vehicles, etc.
- Detecting a vehicle when weather limits visibility, such as in fog, rain, or snow.

To avoid malfunction, always keep the areas of the camera sensor in the windscreen and the radar sensor behind the radiator grille clean from dirt, dust, ice and snow.

⚠ Warning

Complete attention is always required while driving, and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes and/or steer the vehicle to avoid crashes.

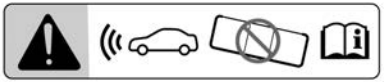
Fault

Messages are displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) if the system does not work as it should, or if a fault is detected. See a dealer for assistance.

Radar Sensor

The autonomous emergency braking system for vehicles with adaptive cruise control is equipped with a radar sensor which is located below the mounting position for the front number plate.

The vehicle is supplied with a number plate mounting bracket to ensure the number plate does not interfere with the radar sensor's operation.



⚠ Warning

Do not remove the number plate mounting bracket on this vehicle for any reason. If the bracket is removed the radar sensor may not work as desired and the performance of the adaptive cruise control, autonomous emergency braking and forward collision alert systems (with radar) may be compromised.

Only use genuine Holden number plate surrounds specifically designed for this vehicle.

⚠ Warning

The radar sensor was aligned carefully during vehicle manufacture. In the event of a front-end impact the alignment may be compromised.
Do not rely on the system.

The front bumper may appear to be intact, however the radar sensor can be out of position and react incorrectly. After a collision, consult a dealer to verify and adjust the radar sensor position.

Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)

The Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) system detects objects on either side of the vehicle, within a specified blind spot zone. A visual alert is displayed in each exterior mirror when objects are detected that may not be visible in the interior and exterior mirrors.

SBZA uses some of the advanced parking assist sensors located in each side of the front and rear bumpers.

⚠ Warning

Side blind zone alert does not replace driver vision. The system does not detect:

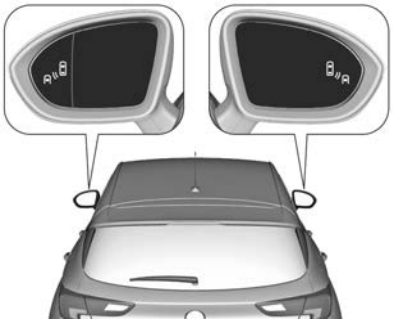
- Vehicles outside the side blind zones which may be rapidly approaching.
- Pedestrians, cyclists or animals.

Before changing a lane, always check all mirrors, look over your shoulder and use the turn signal.

When the system detects a vehicle in the side blind zone while driving forward, either while passing a vehicle or being passed, the yellow warning symbol will illuminate in the relevant exterior mirror. If the driver then activates a turn signal, starts flashing yellow as a warning not to change lanes.

Note

If the overtaking vehicle is travelling at least 10 km/h faster than the vehicle being overtaken, in the relevant exterior mirror may not illuminate.



SBZA is active from speeds of 10 km/h up to 140 km/h. Driving faster than 140 km/h deactivates the system, indicated by lighting warning symbols in both exterior mirrors. Reducing the speed again will extinguish the warning symbols. If a vehicle is then detected in the blind zone, the warning symbols will illuminate as normal on the relevant side.

When the engine is started, both exterior mirror displays will briefly illuminate to indicate the system is operating.

Detection Zones

The detection zones commence at the rear bumper and extend approx. three metres rearward and to the sides. The height of the zone is between approx. half a metre and two metres from the ground.

Side blind zone alert is designed to ignore stationary objects such as guardrails, posts, curbs, walls and beams. Parked vehicles or oncoming vehicles are not detected.

Deactivation

The side blind zone alert can be deactivated. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *87*.

Deactivation is indicated by a message in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

System Limitations

Occasional missed alerts can occur under normal circumstances and will increase in wet conditions. The system may not operate properly when:

- Ice, snow, mud, stickers, magnets, metal plates, or anything else covers the sensors.
- Driving in heavy rainstorms.
- The area surrounding the detection sensor has been damaged or is not repaired correctly.
- There are extreme temperature changes.

In the event of a fault in the system or if the system does not work due to temporary conditions, the symbols in the mirrors will be permanently illuminated and a message is displayed in the DIC. Seek the assistance of a dealer.

Lane Keep Assist (LKA)

Lane Keep Assist (LKA) helps to avoid collisions due to unintentional lane departures.

The front camera observes the lane markings between which the vehicle is driving.

If the vehicle approaches a lane marking, the steering wheel is gently turned to position the vehicle back into the lane. Turn the steering wheel in same direction if system steering is not sufficient. Turn the steering wheel gently into opposite direction if lane change is intended.

When crossing a lane marking significantly, lane keep assist displays a visual warning and an acoustic warning sounds.

Unintended lane departure is assumed:

- without using turn signal,
- using the turn signal in the opposite direction of the lane departure,
- without braking,
- without acceleration, or
- without active steering.

Note

- The system may be switched off during detection of ambiguous lane markings, e.g. in construction areas.
- The system may be switched off if it detects lanes which are too narrow, too wide or too curved.

Activation

LKA is activated by pressing . The LED in the button illuminates to indicate the system is switched on.

When in the instrument cluster illuminates green, the system is ready to assist. The system is operational at vehicle speeds above 60 km/h and if lane markings are available.

The system gently turns the steering wheel and changes to yellow if the vehicle approaches a detected lane marking without using the turn signal in that direction.

The system alerts by flashing together with three chimes from that direction, if the lane is departed significantly.

The system is only operable when a lane marking is detected. If the system only detects lane markings on one side of the road, it will only assist for this side.

LKA detects hands-free driving. In this case a message in the Driver Information Centre is displayed and a chime sounds as long as lane keep assist detects hands-free driving.

⚠ Warning

Always keep your attention on the road and maintain correct vehicle position within the lane, otherwise vehicle damage, injury or death could occur.

Lane keep assist does not continuously steer the vehicle. The system may not keep the vehicle in the lane or give an alert, even if a lane marking is detected.

The steering of the lane keep assist may not be sufficient to avoid a lane departure.

The system may not detect hands-off driving due to external influences (road condition and surface, weather, etc.). The driver has full responsibility to control the vehicle and is always required to keep the hands on the steering wheel while driving.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Using the system while driving on slippery roads could cause loss of control of the vehicle. Switch the system off.

Deactivation

The system is deactivated by pressing . The LED in the button extinguishes.

System Limitations

The system may not operate properly when:

- Vehicle speed is out of range, e.g. below 60 km/h.
- Driving on winding or hilly roads.
- When driving at night.
- Weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow.
- The sensor in the windscreen is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, windscreen damage or affected by foreign objects, e.g. stickers.
- The sun is shining directly into the camera lens.
- Vehicles are detected closely ahead.
- Banked roads.
- Road edges.
- Roads with poor lane markings.
- Sudden lighting changes.
- Vehicle modifications, e.g. tyres.

Switch off the system if the system is disturbed by tar marks, shadows, road cracks, temporary or construction lane markings, or other road imperfections.

Fuel

⚠ Danger

Always switch off the engine and any mobile phones when refuelling.

Do not smoke or allow open flames or sparks near the vehicle when refuelling.

If fuel fumes are detected while driving, the cause should be identified and corrected without delay by a Holden Dealer.

Static electricity can ignite fuel vapour. Only use pumps, hoses and containers that are properly grounded when filling up with fuel.

To avoid injury to you and to others, read and follow all instructions at the petrol station pump.

⚠ Warning

USE OF FUEL CONTAINING ETHANOL

When filling the fuel tank with an ethanol-petrol fuel blend, under no circumstances should fuel containing more than 10% ethanol be used.

Use of such fuels may result in engine malfunction, starting and operating difficulties and materials degradation. These adverse effects could result in permanent damage to the vehicle and personal injury.

The use of fuel containing more than 10% ethanol may also affect your vehicle warranty to the extent that Holden considers that the fuel affects the specifications and quality of your vehicle.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

It is also important to note that when fuel containing ethanol is used, fuel consumption can be expected to increase due to the lower energy content of ethanol.

The vehicle may be refuelled with E10 and unleaded fuel containing no ethanol. It is acceptable to mix these fuels.

The use of any fuel, other than the fuel specified, may seriously damage the vehicle and may void the warranty. See *Recommended Fuel* ⇨ *218*. Only clean fuel of good quality should be used.

Recommended Fuel

Purchasing your fuel from a reputable fuel retailer may reduce the risk of purchasing fuel which contains abnormal fuel properties.

Caution

Use of fuel with too low an octane rating could lead to uncontrolled combustion and engine damage.

1.4L Engine

Use of clean unleaded petrol of 91 Research Octane Number (RON) rating or higher is recommended.

The use of premium unleaded petrol of 95 or 98 RON may provide a small improvement in performance and fuel economy.

1.6L Engine

Use of clean premium unleaded petrol of 95 Research Octane Number (RON) rating or higher is recommended.

The use of premium unleaded petrol of 98 RON may provide a small improvement in performance and fuel economy.

The use of unleaded petrol of regular 91 RON rating may be used where 95 RON is not available, however a reduction in performance may be noticed.

Filling the Tank

The fuel filler is located behind the hinged fuel filler door on the driver's side of the vehicle.

⚠ Danger

Before refuelling, switch off the engine and mobile phones.

Follow the operating and safety instructions of the filling station when refuelling.

⚠ Danger

Fuel is flammable and explosive. No smoking. No naked flames or sparks.

If you can smell fuel in your vehicle, have the cause of this remedied immediately by a Holden dealer.

The fuel filler door can only be opened if the vehicle is unlocked. Release the fuel filler door by pushing the rear edge.

The fuel filler cap can be retained in the bracket on the filler flap.

To refuel, fully insert the filler hose nozzle.

After the automatic cut-off, the tank can be topped up by operating the fuel pump a maximum of two more times.

Be careful not to spill fuel. Wait a few seconds after you have finished pumping before removing the nozzle.

Close the filler door and allow it to engage.

Clean any spilled fuel from painted surfaces as soon as possible.

Trailer Towing

The word trailer is used throughout this section and includes all types of towed vehicles, such as caravans, boat trailers or any other special purpose trailer.

Towing

Handling, durability and economy may be affected by towing a trailer.

A Holden Dealer will assist with supply and installation of towing equipment.

Maximum towing capacities (kg)

Engine	1.4L 4 cyl Petrol	1.6L 4 cyl Petrol
Braked Trailer	1200	1420
Unbraked Trailer	750	750

Note
Exceeding these values could affect your vehicle warranty.

Mandatory Equipment: Holden genuine towbar and Holden genuine wiring harness.

Overloading

Never exceed the loads given for the towing equipment fitted to the vehicle.

All mandatory equipment must be fitted, otherwise you may void the Vehicle Warranty, to the extent Holden considers the overloading or missing equipment to have affected the specifications or quality of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Holden will not accept liability for defects occurring in towing equipment not marketed by Holden or for defects in the vehicle arising from the use of such equipment or for loss or injury caused by use of such equipment. The use of such equipment may void your vehicle warranty, to the extent Holden considers the non-recommended equipment affects the specifications or quality of your Holden vehicle.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

It is inadvisable to mix and match different brands of towing equipment, as equipment is usually designed as an integrated package.

⚠ Warning

When towing a trailer, exhaust gases may collect at the rear of the vehicle and enter it if the tailgate is open.

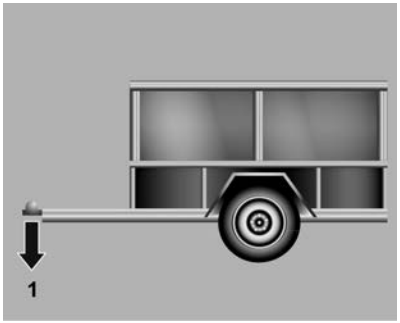
When towing a trailer:

- Do not drive with the tailgate open.
- Fully open the instrument panel vents and set the climate control to face or bi-level mode and outside air off.

For further information about carbon monoxide, see *Fuel* ⇨ *218*.

Trailer Recommendations

Tow Ball Load



A trailer hitched to a vehicle places a weight on the tow bar. This weight is called the tow bar ball weight or tow ball load (1).

- The tow ball load should be 4% – 10% of the trailer mass and a maximum of 75 kg.

Adjust by moving items forwards or backwards within the trailer, to change the balance.

Important: Tow ball load must not exceed 75 kg.

Check the tow ball load before coupling the trailer to the towing vehicle.

If the tow ball load is too light or too heavy, the steering and handling of the vehicle may be affected.

Axle loads must not be exceeded when the tow ball load is included. See “Axle loads” under *Vehicle Weight* ⇨ *279*.

If maximum axle loads are exceeded, weight should be removed from the rear of the vehicle and transferred onto the trailer.

Ensure the weight of the packed trailer is not greater than the towing capacity of the Holden approved tow bar package fitted to the vehicle, or the vehicle's maximum towing capacity, which ever is lower.

Towing Precautions

- When towing, check and inflate the tyres to the recommended pressure. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *254*.
- Tighten the tow ball retaining nut to 140 Nm (Newton metres) and check the torque frequently.
- Vehicles handle differently when towing. Take a couple of short distance trips with the trailer before taking a long trip.
- Have the vehicle and trailer correctly maintained and serviced, with particular attention given to the brakes, tyres, suspension, wheel bearings, towing coupling and lighting.
- Use an extended-arm mirror on both sides of the vehicle if necessary.
- Headlamps may need re-aiming after the loaded trailer has been hitched, particularly if a load distribution hitch is not used.
- Use a lower gear and the brakes, when descending steep hills.
- Do not use axle-mounted hitches.

- Ensure the tow bar does not obscure the rear number plate. Remove the tow bar tongue when not required for towing.
- If a tow bar is removed, have any mounting holes in the underbody sealed to prevent entry of exhaust fumes, dust and water.
- The anti-rattle bolt and nut should be removed when towing to prevent damage to the bolt or tow bar tongue.
- The parking assist may be automatically deactivated when towing a trailer. If not, turn it off while a trailer is attached. See *Parking Assist* ⇨ *186*.

Trailer Brakes

- Trailer brakes are mandatory on trailers with an Aggregate Trailer Mass (ATM) of more than 750 kg.
- Consult the appropriate regulatory body in your State or Territory for the legal requirements of trailer brakes.

Running-in When Towing

It is recommended that a new vehicle be driven for at least 1,500 km before towing.

If towing is necessary before this, do not exceed 80 km/h. This also applies if the vehicle is fitted with a new or reconditioned engine, transmission or rear axle.

Vehicle Maintenance

More frequent vehicle maintenance is required when using the vehicle to tow. Refer to the Service & Warranty Booklet in the vehicle's glovebox.

Trailer Sway Control (TSC)

The vehicle has a Trailer Sway Control (TSC) feature as part of the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system. If TSC detects the trailer is swaying, the vehicle's brakes are automatically applied.

When TSC is applying the brakes, flashes to notify the driver to reduce speed. If the trailer continues to sway, ESC will reduce engine torque to help slow the vehicle.

TSC will not function if ESC is turned off. See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* ⇨ *181*.

Conversions and Add-Ons

Add-On Electrical Equipment

Accessories and Vehicle Modifications

We recommend the use of genuine parts and accessories and factory approved parts specific for your vehicle type. We cannot assess or guarantee reliability of other products - even if they have a regulatory or otherwise granted approval.

Any modification, conversion or other changes made to standard vehicle specifications (including, without limitation, software modifications, modifications of the electronic control units) may invalidate the warranty offered by Holden. Furthermore, such changes may impact fuel consumption, CO2 emissions and other emissions of the vehicle and cause the vehicle to no longer conform to the type approval, impacting the validity of your vehicle registration.

Air Intakes

Do not fit any accessory over the upper or lower air intakes at the front of the vehicle, as this may affect engine cooling.

Holden Genuine Accessories are an exception, however they should be removed in high load and high temperature conditions.

Caution

In high load and high temperature applications (e.g. towing) no objects should be fitted over the upper or lower air intake at the front of the vehicle, as this could affect cooling. This includes removing Holden Genuine Accessories in this area, in these conditions.

Roo Bars

⚠ Warning

Fitting a roo bar may affect crash performance, airbag performance and engine cooling.

Roo bars should not be fitted to vehicles operating in suburban areas, as they may increase the risk of injury to a pedestrian in the event of a collision.

Vehicle Care

General Information
General Information 226
Accessories and Modifications 226
Vehicle Storage 226
Emission Information 226
Emission Control System 227

Vehicle Checks
Bonnet 228
Engine Compartment Overview 230
Engine Oil 233
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter 235
Engine Coolant 235
Engine Overheating 236
Washer Fluid 238
Brakes 238
Brake Fluid 238
Battery 238
Wiper Blade Replacement 240

Bulb Replacement
Bulb Replacement 241
Taillamps 241
Side Turn Signal Lights 245
Licence Plate Lamp 245

Electrical System
Fuses 246
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 247
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 250
Rear Fuse Panel 251

Vehicle Tools
Tools 253

Wheels and Tyres
Tyres 254
Tyre Pressure 254
Tread Depth 255
Tyre Rotation 255
Buying New Tyres 256
Wheel Alignment and Tyre Balance 256
Tyre Chains 256
Tyre Changing 257

Jump Starting
Jump Starting 262

Towing the Vehicle
Towing the Vehicle 264
Towing Another Vehicle 265

Appearance Care
Exterior Care 266
Interior Care 272
Floor Mats 272

General Information

For service and parts needs, visit your dealer. You will receive genuine parts and trained and supported service people.

Accessories and Modifications

Adding non-genuine accessories or making modifications to the vehicle can affect vehicle performance, safety and durability.

These accessories or modifications could even cause malfunction or damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Genuine Holden accessories are designed to complement and function with other systems on the vehicle. See your dealer for assistance with the Genuine Holden accessories that are available for your vehicle.

Vehicle Storage

Storage for a Long Period of Time

If the vehicle is to be stored for several months:

- Wash and wax the vehicle.
- Clean and preserve the rubber seals.
- Fill the fuel tank completely.
- Change the engine oil.
- Drain the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the coolant antifreeze and corrosion protection.
- Adjust tyre pressure to the value specified for full load.
- Park the vehicle in a dry, well ventilated place. Set shift lever to P (Park) to prevent the vehicle from rolling.
- Do not apply the parking brake.
- Open the bonnet, close all doors and lock the vehicle.
- Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Beware that all systems are not functional, e.g. anti-theft system.

Putting Back into Operation

When the vehicle is to be put back into operation:

- Connect the clamp to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Activate the electronics of the power windows. See *Power Windows* ⇨ *24*.
- Check tyre pressure.
- Fill the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the engine oil level.
- Check the coolant level.

Emission Information

The emission control systems are designed to reduce the amount of hydrocarbons (HC), carbon monoxide (CO), and oxides of nitrogen (NOx) that are emitted from the engine and fuel system into the atmosphere. HC and NOx, when

exposed to sunlight under certain conditions, contribute to photochemical smog. In addition, CO is toxic to inhale.

Emission Control System

Major emission control systems the vehicle may have are:

- Evaporative emission control system. This system is designed to prevent the escape of fuel vapour from the fuel system and recycle the vapours through the normal combustion process.
- Crankcase emission control system. This system is designed to prevent blow-by gases from escaping into the atmosphere and recycle them through the combustion process.
- Exhaust emission control system. The various components of this system operate collectively to limit HC, CO and NOx emissions in the exhaust gas. The exhaust emission control system consists of components including electronic control of spark, fuel and idle speed. In addition vehicles have a catalytic converter and closed loop mixture control system.

It is recommended that service and repair to fuel or emission systems be carried out by your Holden Dealer.

Owner Responsibility

The engine, engine control system and exhaust system of the vehicle must NOT be modified in any way.

⚠ Warning

Any person who removes, modifies or hinders any part of the emission control system may be contravening Australian Design Rules. It is also illegal to drive a vehicle modified in this way.

Maintenance Requirements

Have the vehicle serviced at the frequency shown in the Maintenance Schedule in your Service & Warranty Booklet.

It is recommended that servicing be carried out by a Holden Dealer who will maintain the vehicle's emission control system as per the Service & Warranty Booklet.

It is recommended that all fluid levels are checked weekly.

Reducing Fuel Consumption

Engine

Have the vehicle serviced regularly in accordance with the Maintenance Schedule in the Service & Warranty Booklet.

Tyre Pressure

Keep the tyres at the recommended pressures. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *282*.

Wheel Alignment

Maintain correct front and rear wheel alignment.

Warm-ups and Idling

Avoid long engine warm-ups. They are unnecessary and waste fuel.

Avoid long engine idling.

Accelerating, Driving and Braking

Accelerate gently and avoid rapid starts.

Drive the vehicle at steady speeds where possible (after running-in).

Riding the Brake

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal when you do not intend to brake.

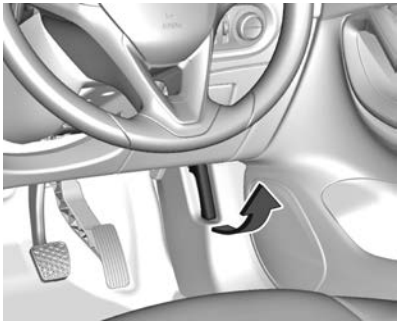
Air Conditioning

Switch off the air conditioning when not required, however, once every 2 weeks, with the engine running, switch the air conditioning on for 5 to 10 minutes to lubricate the seals (even in winter).

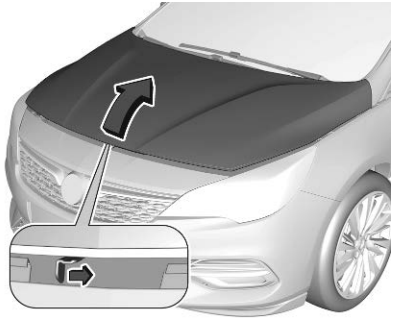
Vehicle Checks

Bonnet

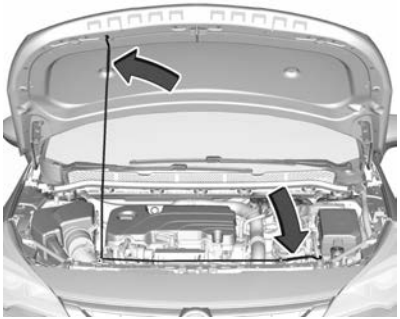
Opening



Pull the release lever and return it to its original position.



Move the safety catch lever to the side and open the bonnet.

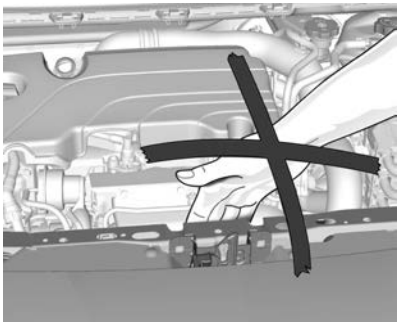


Raise the bonnet support and fit securely in the bonnet recess.

Note

If the bonnet is opened during an Autostop, the engine will be restarted automatically for safety reasons. See *Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ *168*.

Performing Work



⚠ Warning

Only perform engine compartment checks when the ignition is off. The cooling fan may start operating automatically, even if the ignition is off.

⚠ Danger

The ignition system uses extremely high voltage. Do not touch.

Closing

Check there are no objects left in the engine compartment.

Remove the bonnet support from the bonnet and place securely into the holder.

Lower the bonnet and let it fall into the latch from a low height (approx. 30 cm). Check the bonnet is engaged.

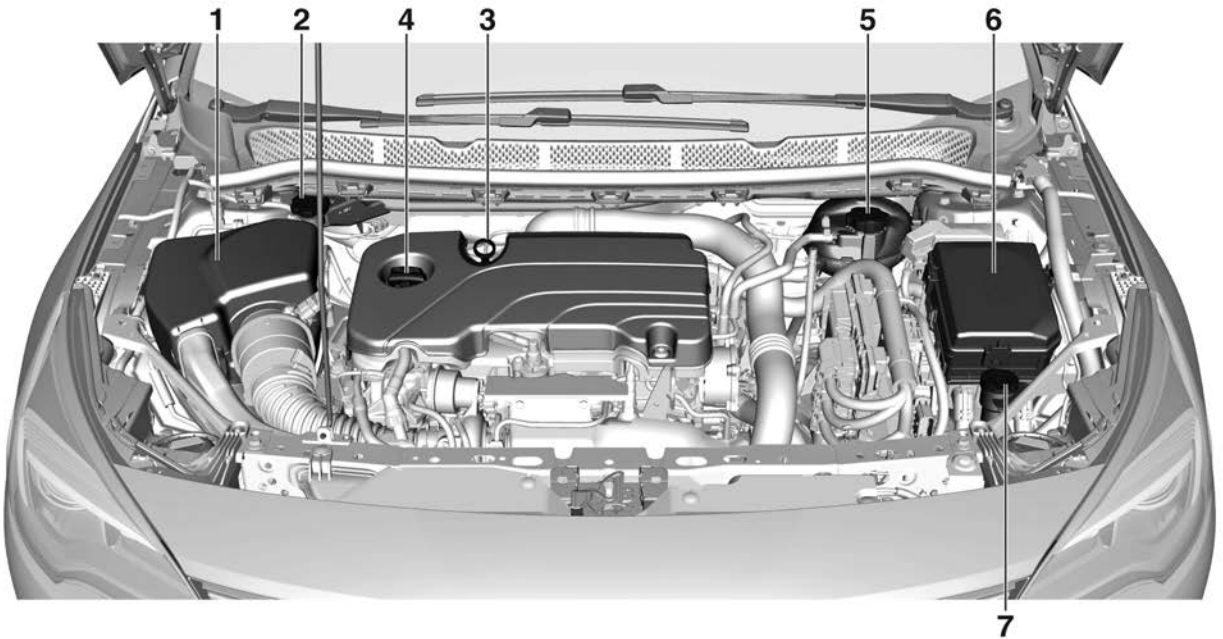
Caution

To avoid denting the bonnet panel, do not press the bonnet into the latch.

⚠ Warning

If while driving you notice that the bonnet has not been properly closed, pull the vehicle over to the side of the road at the earliest possible moment and close the bonnet correctly.

Engine Compartment Overview

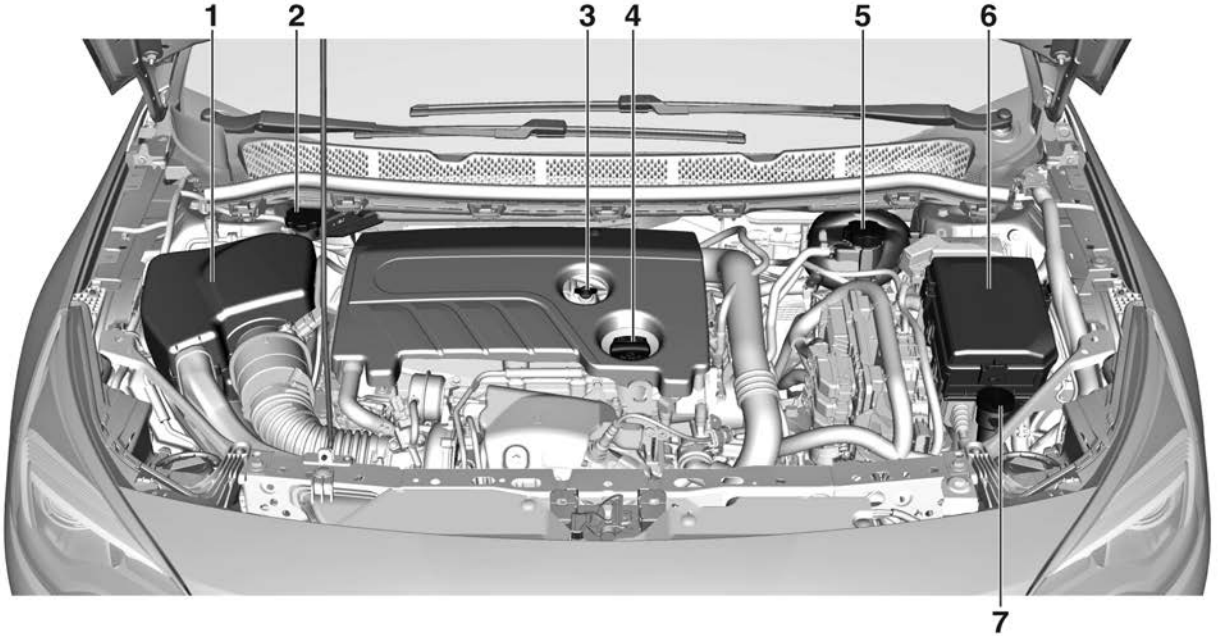


1.4L Petrol Engine

1. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter* ⇨ *235*.
2. Brake Fluid Reservoir. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *238*.
3. Engine Oil Dipstick. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *233*.
4. Engine Oil Filler Cap. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *233*.
5. Engine Coolant Tank. See *Engine Coolant* ⇨ *235*.
6. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block* ⇨ *247*.
7. Windscreen Washer Fluid Reservoir. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *238*.

Note

The vehicle battery is located in the rear compartment. See *Battery* ⇨ *238*.



1.6L Petrol Engine

1. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter* ⇨ *235*.
2. Brake Fluid Reservoir. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *238*.
3. Engine Oil Dipstick. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *233*.
4. Engine Oil Filler Cap. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *233*.
5. Engine Coolant Tank. See *Engine Coolant* ⇨ *235*.
6. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block* ⇨ *247*.
7. Windscreen Washer Fluid Reservoir. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *238*.

Note

The vehicle battery is located in the rear compartment. See *Battery* ⇨ *238*.

Engine Oil

⚠ Danger

Engine oil is an irritant and if ingested can cause illness or death.

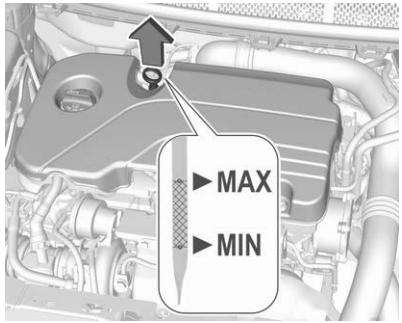
Avoid repeated or prolonged contact with skin.

Wash exposed areas with soap and water or hand cleaner.

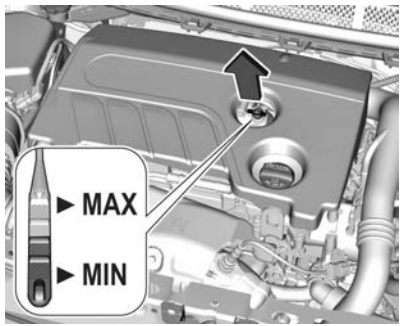
Checking Oil Level

The engine must be at operating temperature and the ignition turned off for at least 10 minutes.

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.



1.4L Engine



1.6L Engine

2. Remove the dipstick and wipe clean
3. Reinsert the dipstick firmly.
4. Remove and read the oil level. The level should be between the MIN and MAX marks. Add oil if the level is at or below the MIN mark.

Dilution

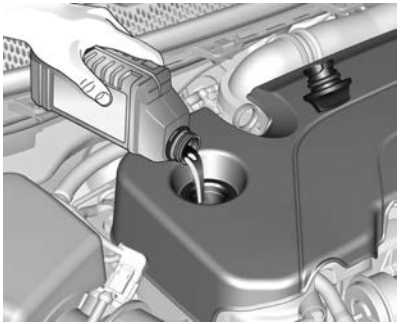
When a vehicle is frequently driven on short trips, the engine often fails to reach normal operating temperatures:

- The oil becomes diluted by fuel and moisture that settles in the oil pan.
- This may raise the oil level creating a false reading on the engine oil dipstick.

For example, in a vehicle that has accumulated 1,500 km of short distance or intermittent city operation and has consumed a normal amount of oil, the level may not have dropped from the upper area/mark, due to dilution. If this vehicle is driven for some distance at highway speeds the dilution elements evaporate, resulting in a sudden drop in oil level.

Adding Engine Oil

See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *275* and *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *281*.



1. Rotate the engine oil filler cap anticlockwise and remove.
2. Add enough oil to reach within the MAX mark.
3. Check the level on the dipstick and add further oil if necessary. The engine oil must not exceed the MAX mark.

Caution
Overfilled engine oil must be drained or suctioned out.

4. Replace the engine oil filler cap tightly by rotating clockwise.

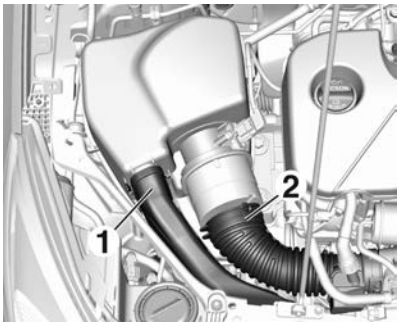
Note

Non-detergent and other low quality oils, the use of break-in oil, tune up compounds, friction reducing compounds and other supplemental additives are not recommended. Their use increases costs, may be detrimental to the operation of the vehicle and may void the vehicle warranty, to the extent that Holden considers the non-recommended fluid to have affected the specifications or quality of the vehicle.

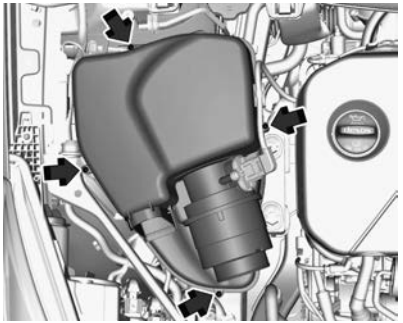
Engine Oil Change Intervals

Refer to the Service & Warranty Booklet.

Engine Air Cleaner/Filter



1. Unclip and remove the air intake duct (1).
2. Loosen the hose clamp and disconnect the air outlet hose (2).



3. Remove the four screws and remove the air cleaner housing.
4. Lift out the air filter.

Engine Coolant

The cooling system allows the engine to maintain the correct operating temperature.

⚠ Warning

An under bonnet electric fan can start up even when the engine is not running and can cause injury.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any under bonnet electric fan.

⚠ Warning

Do not touch heater or radiator hoses, or other engine parts. They may be very hot and can burn you. Do not run the engine if there is a leak; all coolant could leak out. That could cause an engine fire and can burn you. Fix any leak before driving the vehicle.

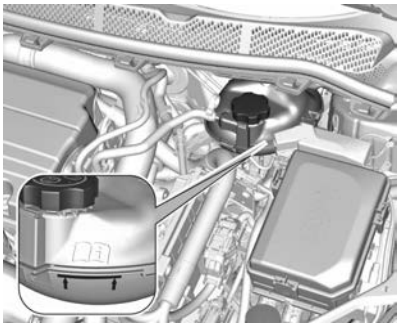
The engine cooling system in the vehicle is filled with DexCool® engine coolant mixture. This coolant needs to be checked and changed at appropriate intervals. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *275* and refer to the Service & Warranty booklet.

The following explains the cooling system and how to check and add coolant when it is low. If there is a problem with engine overheating, see *Engine Overheating* ⇨ *236*.

Checking Coolant

The vehicle must be on a level surface when checking the coolant level.

Check the coolant level in the engine coolant tank when the engine is cold.



When cold, the coolant level should be above the filling line on the front of the coolant tank. Top up if the level is low, see “Adding Coolant” further in this section.

Adding Coolant

⚠ Warning

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system are under pressure. Turning the pressure cap, even a little, can cause them to come out at high speed and you could be burned. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and pressure cap to cool.

Top up with the recommended coolant. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *275*.

If no coolant concentrate is available, use clean tap water or distilled water. Install the cap tightly.

Have the coolant concentration checked and have the cause of the coolant loss remedied by a dealer.

Engine Overheating

The vehicle has an engine coolant temperature gauge on the instrument cluster and overheat messages in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) to warn of engine overheating. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge* ⇨ *72*. The DIC also displays overheat messages.

The decision may be made not to lift the bonnet when the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the overheat zone or an engine overheat DIC message displays, but instead to get service help right away.

If the decision to lift the bonnet is made, make sure the vehicle is parked on a level surface. Then check to see if the engine cooling fan is running. If the engine is overheating, the fan should be running. If it is not, do not continue to run the engine. Have the vehicle serviced.

Caution

Do not run the engine if there is a leak in the engine cooling system. This can cause a loss of all coolant and can damage the system and vehicle. Have any leaks fixed right away.

If Steam is Coming from the Engine Compartment

⚠ Warning

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system are under pressure. Turning the pressure cap, even a little, can cause them to come out at high speed and you could be burned. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and pressure cap to cool.

If No Steam is Coming from the Engine Compartment

If an engine overheat warning is displayed but no steam can be seen or heard, the problem may not be too serious. Sometimes the engine can get a little too hot when the vehicle:

- Climbs a long hill on a hot day.
- Stops after high-speed driving.
- Idles for long periods in traffic.
- Tows a trailer.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the overheat zone and an overheat DIC message is displayed with no sign of steam:

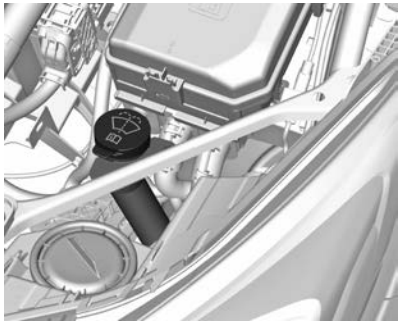
1. Turn the air conditioning off.
2. Turn the heater on to the highest temperature and to the highest fan speed. Open the windows as necessary.
3. When it is safe to do so, pull off the road, shift to P (Park) or N (Neutral), and let the engine idle.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge is no longer in the overheat zone or an overheat DIC message no longer displays, the vehicle can be driven. Continue to drive the vehicle slowly for about 10 minutes. Keep a safe distance from the vehicle in front. If the engine coolant temperature gauge does not go back to the overheat zone or an overheat DIC message does not display, continue to drive normally and have the cooling system checked for proper fill and function.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge is still in the overheat zone or an overheat DIC message still displays, pull over, stop, and park the vehicle right away. If overheat messages appear repeatedly, see your dealer.

If there is no sign of steam, idle the engine for three minutes while parked. If the engine coolant temperature gauge is still in the overheat zone or an overheat DIC message displays, turn off the engine until it cools down.

Washer Fluid



Fill with clean water mixed with a suitable quantity of approved windscreen washer fluid.

Do not use ordinary soap or detergent as they may damage the windscreen wiper blade rubbers.

Ensure the cap is secured.

Brakes

In the event of the brake linings reaching their minimum thickness, a squealing noise sounds during braking.

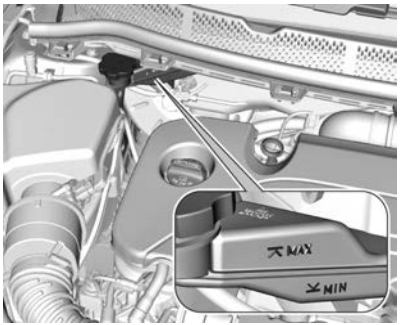
Continued driving is possible but have the brake lining replaced as soon as possible.

Once new brake linings are installed, do not brake unnecessarily hard for the first few journeys.

Brake Fluid

⚠ Warning

Brake fluid is poisonous and corrosive and will damage the paint finish of the vehicle if spilt.



The brake fluid level must be between the MIN and MAX marks. If fluid level is below MIN, seek the assistance of a dealer.

Only top up with the specified brake fluid. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *275*.

Battery

⚠ Warning

Batteries emit an explosive gas mixture which may be ignited. Therefore, you should keep sparks and flames away from the battery at all times. Never smoke near a battery.

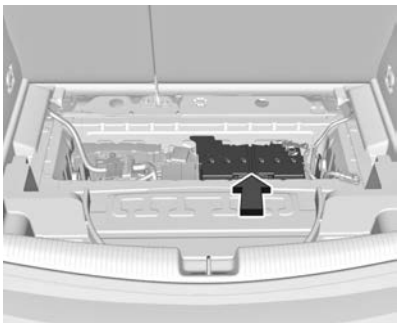
Batteries contain sulphuric acid. If acid contacts skin or clothing, flush immediately with plenty of water. In case of eye contact, flush with plenty of water and contact a doctor immediately.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Battery acid also damages paint and fabrics. To minimise damage, wash off immediately.

Take care with all metal objects and tools including items you may wear (for example jewellery, rings and metal watch bands) near battery terminals.



The vehicle battery is in the rear compartment below the load compartment cover.

There are connecting points for jump starting in the engine compartment. See *Jump Starting* ⇨ *262*.

The vehicle battery is maintenance-free provided the driving profile allows sufficient charging of the battery. Short-distance-driving and frequent engine starts can discharge the battery. Avoid the use of unnecessary electrical consumers.

Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

Storing the vehicle for more than four weeks can lead to battery discharge. Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Ensure the ignition is turned off before connecting or disconnecting the vehicle battery.

Vehicle Battery Replacement

Note

Any deviation from the instructions given in this section may lead to temporary deactivation or disturbance of the stop-start system.

When the vehicle battery is being replaced, ensure there are no open ventilation holes in the vicinity of the positive terminal. If a ventilation hole is open in this area, it must be closed off with a dummy cap, and the ventilation in the vicinity of the negative terminal must be opened.

Ensure that the battery is always replaced by the same type of battery.

We recommend that you have the vehicle battery replaced by a dealer.

Vehicle Battery Charging

⚠ Warning

On vehicles with stop-start system, ensure the charging potential does not exceed 14.6 volts when using a battery charger. Otherwise the vehicle battery might be damaged.

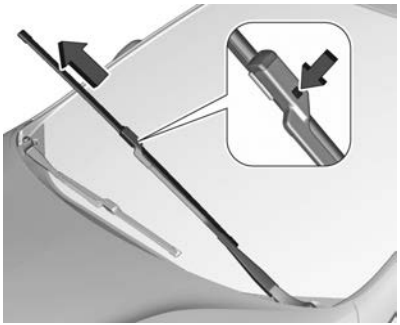
Warning Label

Meaning of symbols:

- No sparks, naked flames or smoking.
- Always shield eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness or injury.
- Keep the vehicle battery out of reach of children.
- The vehicle battery contains sulphuric acid which could cause blindness or serious burn injuries.
- See the Owner's Manual for further information.
- Explosive petrol may be present in the vicinity of the vehicle battery.

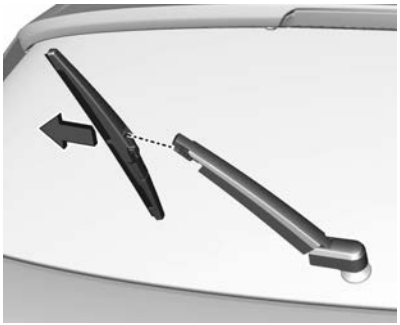
Wiper Blade Replacement

Windscreen



1. Lift the wiper arm until it stays in the raised position.
2. Press the button to disengage the wiper blade and remove.
3. Attach the replacement wiper blade slightly angled to the wiper arm. Push until it engages.
4. Lower the wiper arm carefully.

Rear Window



1. Lift the wiper arm.
2. Disengage wiper blade as shown in illustration and remove.
3. Attach the replacement wiper blade slightly angled to the wiper arm. Push until it engages.
4. Lower wiper arm carefully.

Bulb Replacement

Turn the ignition off and switch off the relevant lamp or close the doors.

Only hold a new bulb at the base. Do not touch the bulb glass with bare hands.

Use only the same bulb type for replacement. Replace headlamp bulbs from within the engine compartment.

After a bulb replacement, turn the ignition on, operate and check the lamps.

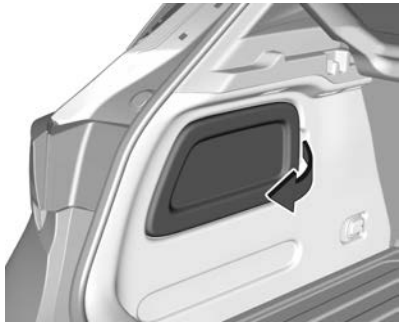
Bulbs to be Replaced by a Dealer

The following bulbs or LEDs should be changed by a dealer:

- LED headlamps.
- Front turn signal lamps.
- Daytime running lamps.
- LED tail and brake lamps
- Interior and load compartment lamps.

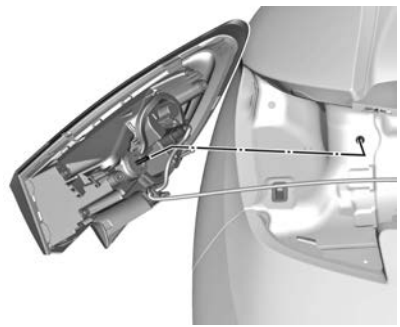
Taillamps

Lamp in the Body

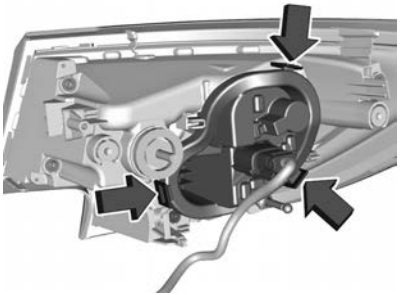


1. Remove the cover on that side.

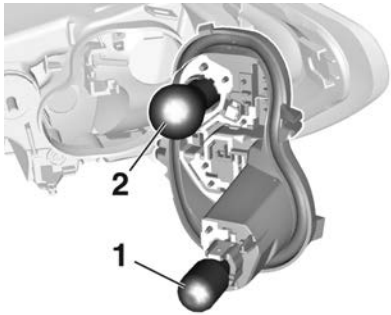
2. Unscrew the two plastic securing nuts from the inside by hand.



3. Carefully withdraw the tail lamp assembly from the recess and remove.
4. Detach the cable from the retainer.

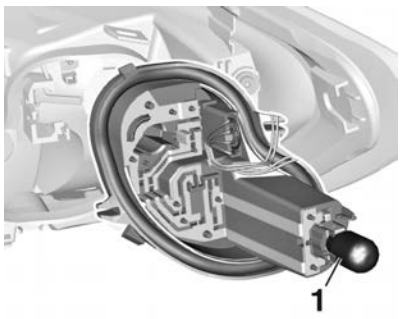


5. Press the three retaining lugs and remove the bulb carrier from the lamp.
6. Remove the bulbs.
   - Without LED tail lamps / brake lights:



(1) Turn signal
(2) Tail lamp / Brake light

- With LED tail lamps / brake lights:



(1) Turn signal

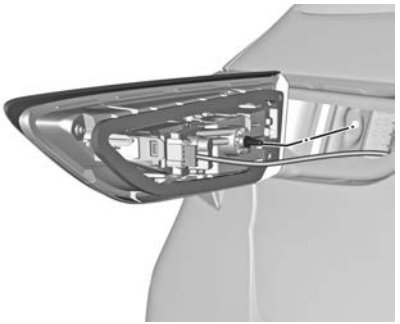
7. Attach the bulb carrier to the lamp assembly.
8. Attach the cable to the retainer.
9. Attach the lamp assembly to the vehicle body and tighten the securing nuts from the inside of the rear compartment.

   Attach the cover.

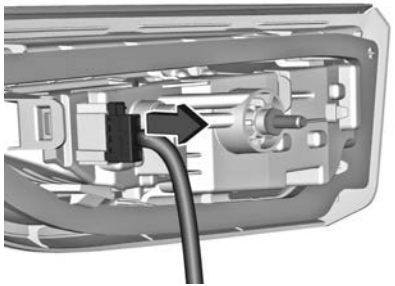
Lamp in the Tailgate

1. Release the cover in the tailgate and remove it.

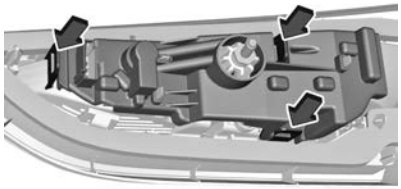
2. Unscrew the plastic securing nut by hand.



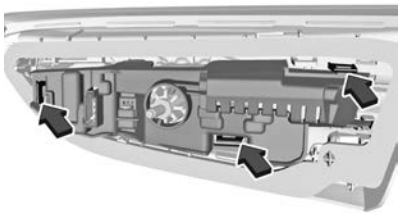
3. Carefully withdraw the lamp assembly from the recesses and remove.



4. Detach the plug from the light assembly.
5. Press the three retaining lugs and remove the bulb carrier from the lamp.

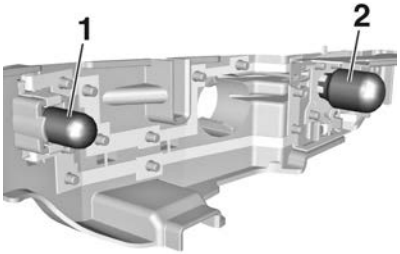


- Without LED tail lamps / brake lights.



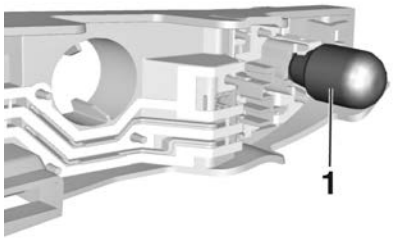
- With LED tail lamps / brake lights.

6. Remove the bulbs.
   - Without LED tail lamps / brake lights:



(1) Tail lamp
(2) Rear fog light (right-hand) / Reverse light (left-hand)

- With LED tail lamps / brake lights:

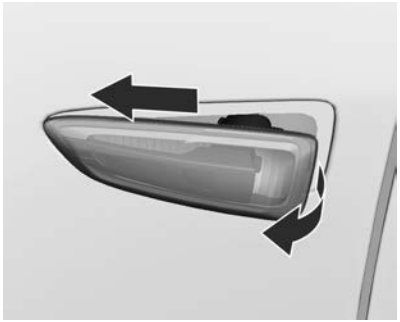


(1) Reverse light

7. Insert the bulb carrier into the tail lamp assembly and connect the plug.
8. Fit the lamp assembly on the tailgate and tighten the screw from the inside.

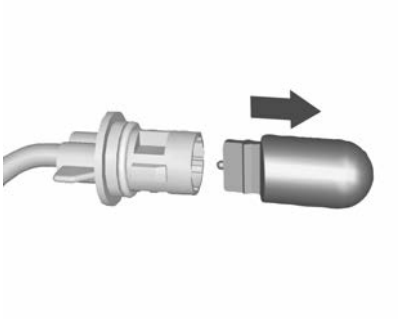
   Attach the cover.

Side Turn Signal Lights



1. Slide the lamp housing forward and remove it from the rear.

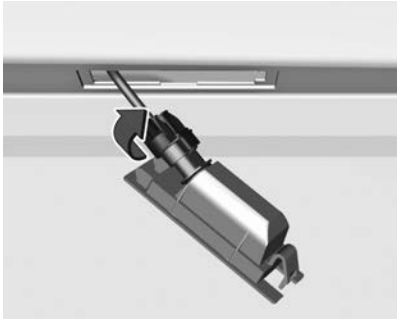
2. Turn the bulb holder anticlockwise and remove from the housing.



3. Pull the bulb from bulb holder and replace it.
4. Insert the bulb holder and turn clockwise.
5. Insert the front of the lamp, slide it forward and insert the rear into place.

Licence Plate Lamp

1. Insert a screwdriver into the recess of the lamp cover. Press to the side and release the retainer.



2. Remove the lamp downwards, taking care not to pull on the cable.
3. Turn the bulb holder anticlockwise and remove from the lamp housing.

4. Pull the bulb from bulb holder and replace it.
5. Insert the bulb holder into the lamp and turn clockwise.
6. Insert the lamp, and ensure the retainer engages securely.

Electrical System

Fuses

The replacement fuse rating must match the rating of the defective fuse.

Depending on model, there are up to three fuse boxes in the vehicle:

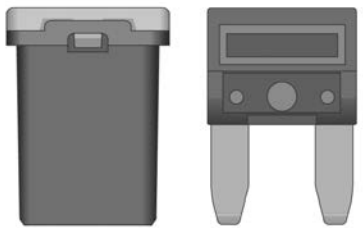
- Engine compartment.
- Instrument panel.
- Rear compartment.

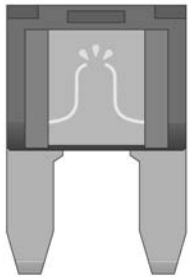
Before replacing a fuse, turn off the switch and the ignition.

A blown fuse can be recognised by its melted wire.

Caution
Do not replace the fuse until the cause of the fault has been rectified.

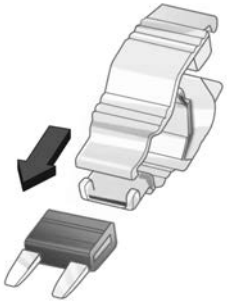
Some functions are protected by several fuses. Fuses may be fitted for some features not fitted to the vehicle.

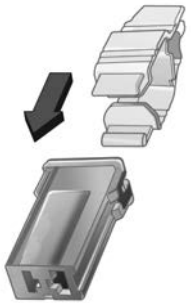




Fuse Extractor

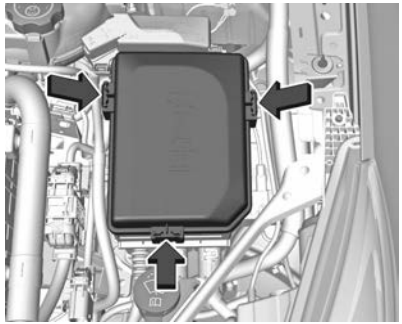
A fuse extractor may be located in the fuse box in the engine compartment.





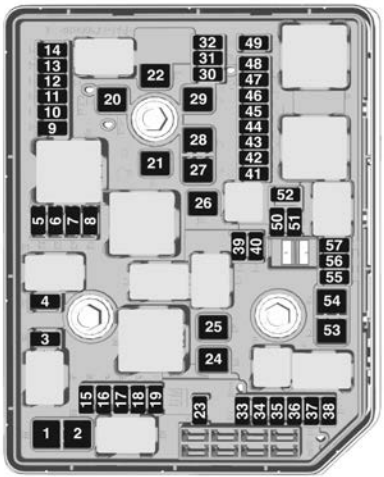
Place the fuse extractor on the various types of fuse from the top or side, and withdraw fuse.

Engine Compartment Fuse Block



The fuse box is in the front left of the engine compartment.

Disengage the cover and remove it.



Note
The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses shown.

Fuses	Circuit
1	Starter
2	Starter
3	Exhaust sensor
4	Engine control module
5	Engine functions
6	Transmission control module
7	Forward collision alert / Adaptive cruise control
8	Engine control module
9	Climate control system
10	Diesel exhaust system
11	Tailgate locking system / Transmission
12	Seat lumbar massage
13	After boil pump

Fuses	Circuit
14	Diesel exhaust system
15	Exhaust sensor
16	Fuel injection
17	Fuel injection
18	Diesel exhaust system
19	-
20	-
21	-
22	ABS
23	Washer system for windscreen and rear window
24	-
25	Diesel fuel heating
26	Transmission control module
27	Power tailgate module
28	-
29	Heated rear window

Fuses	Circuit
30	Mirror defrost
31	-
32	DC transformer/LED display / Electrical heater / Climate control / Glow plug controller
33	-
34	Horn
35	Engine control module
36	Right high beam (Halogen, Eco LED) / Right low beam (LED)
37	Left high beam (Halogen, Eco LED)
38	LED headlight / Automatic headlight range adjustment
39	Front fog light
40	Central Gateway Module
41	-
42	Manual headlight range adjustment
43	Fuel pump
44	Rear view camera / Inside rear view mirror / Trailer module
45	LED headlight left / Automatic headlight range adjustment left
46	Instrument cluster
47	Steering column lock
48	Rear wiper
49	Outside rear view mirror
50	LED headlight right / Automatic headlight range adjustment right
51	Left low beam (LED)
52	Engine control module / Transmission control module
53	Windscreen wiper
54	Windscreen wiper
55	Diesel exhaust system
56	-
57	-

After having changed the defective fuse, close the fuse box cover and press until it engages. If the fuse box cover is not closed correctly, a malfunction may occur.

Instrument Panel Fuse Block

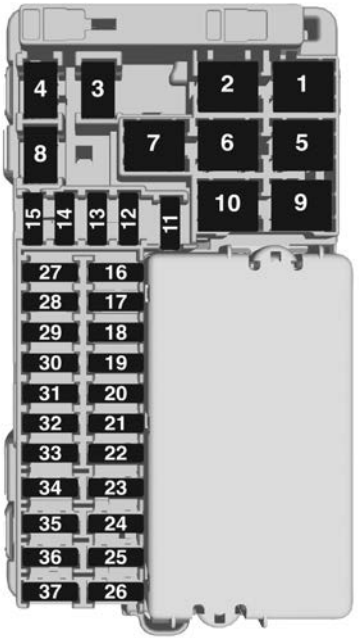
The fuse box is located behind the centre fascia cover. Pull the left side of the cover and then disengage the right side to remove.

After having changed defective fuse, close the fuse box cover:

1. Engage the right side of the cover.
2. Fit the left side of the cover ensuring the securing tab inserts correctly. Clip the cover in place securely.

Note

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses shown.



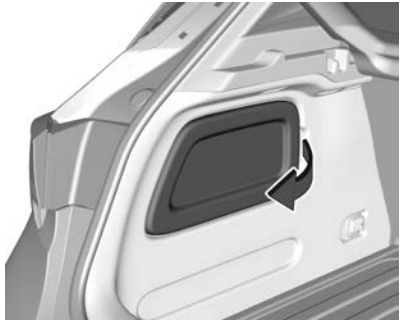
Fuses	Circuit
1	Rear seat heating (vehicles without alarm horn)
2	Climate control system / Fan
3	Power seat driver side
4	Power seat passenger side
5	ABS
6	Power window front
7	-
8	Heated steering wheel
9	Body control module 8
10	Power window rear
11	Sunroof
12	Body control module 6
13	Seat heating (vehicles without alarm horn)

Fuses	Circuit
14	Exterior mirror
15	Body control module 1
16	Body control module 7
17	Body control module 4
18	Body control module 3
19	Data link connector
20	Airbag system
21	Climate control system
22	Central locking system / Tailgate
23	Electronic key system
24	Power seat memory function
25	Airbag system steering wheel
26	Ignition switch / Steering column lock
27	Body control module 2
28	USB socket
29	Cigarette lighter / Power outlet front
30	Shift lever
31	Rear window wiper
32	Transmission control module
33	Anti-theft alarm system / Power sounder
34	Parking assist / Side blind spot alert / Infotainment system / USB socket
35	SOS
36	Info display / Instrument cluster
37	Infotainment system / Radio

Rear Fuse Panel

Rear Side Compartment

If equipped, the rear side compartment fuse box is located behind a cover in the left-hand side trim within the rear compartment.



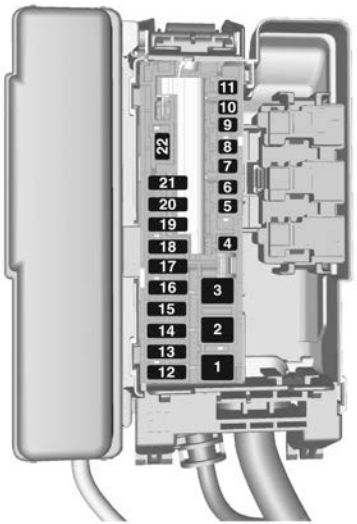
Remove the cover.

Disengage the fuse box cover and remove it.

After having changed the defective fuse, close the fuse box cover and press until it engages.

Note

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses shown.

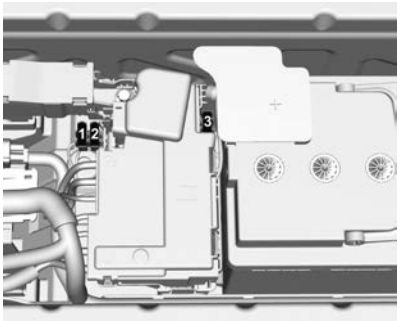


Fuses	Circuit
1	-
2	-
3	Trailer module
4	-
5	-
6	-
7	-
8	-
9	-
10	-
11	Amplifier
12	Front seat heating (vehicles with alarm horn)
13	Rear seat heating (vehicles without alarm horn)
14	Ignition
15	Seat ventilation
16	Trailer outlet
17	Trailer outlet
18	-
19	-

Fuses	Circuit
20	-
21	Electrical rear seat folding
22	-

Battery Compartment

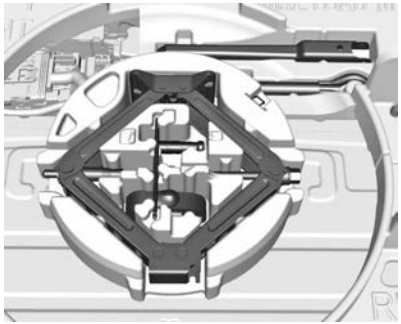
Additional fuses are located near the vehicle battery. See *Battery* ⇨ *238*.



Fuses	Circuit
1	Engine control module
2	Fuel pump
3	Power supply

Vehicle Tools

Tools



The jack, wheel wrench and other items such as a retaining strap for securing a deflated wheel and towing eye are located below the floor cover in the rear compartment .

See *Tyre Changing* ⇨ *257*.

Wheels and Tyres

Tyres

Tyre and Rim Condition

- To avoid tyre and rim damage and possible tyre blow-out, do not drive over sharp edges.
- Drive over edges slowly and at right angles, if possible.
- When parking, ensure the tyres are not pressed against the edge of the kerb.
- Check the tyres regularly for damage, stones, punctures, cuts, cracks, bulges, etc. Also check the rims for damage. Contact a dealer if in doubt.

Tyre Pressure

Keep the tyres at the recommended pressures to avoid increased fuel consumption, uneven and premature tyre wear.

The correct pressures for tyres are shown on the tyre placard on the front passenger door frame and also in the tyre pressure table. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *282*.

Note

- Tyre pressure should be checked when the tyres are cold, as tyre pressure will increase as the tyres warm up.
- Check the air pressure of the tyres (including the spare) weekly, to ensure occupant safety, as well as reducing fuel consumption and increasing the life of the tyres.
- Check pressures when the vehicle has not been driven for over 3 hours. If tyre pressures must be checked immediately after driving more than 2 km, increase tyre placard pressure by 10%.
- Use a tyre pressure gauge to check the tyres. Simply looking at the tyres is not sufficient.
- Replace the valve dust caps.
- Check the condition of the tyre tread and inspect for stones or abnormal wear.
- For constant long distance driving, daily checking is recommended.

Tread Depth

Replace the tyres when:

- They are worn to the point where the tread indicators appear.

  The tyres originally fitted to the vehicle have built-in tread indicators. When only 1.5 mm of tread remains, these indicators show as plain bars across the tread pattern at regular intervals around the tyre.
- The tread or sidewall is cut, split, or cracked deep enough to expose the cord or fabric.
- The tyre has a bump or bulge in it, indicating some kind of internal damage.
- The tyre has a puncture, cut or other damage which cannot be repaired because of the size or location of the damage.
- The cord or fabric is showing.

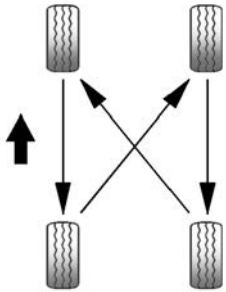
⚠ Warning

Do not attempt to drive on a flat tyre more than is necessary to stop safely. Driving even a short distance can damage the tyre and wheel beyond repair. Tyres which have been repaired or retreaded are not capable of being driven safely at high speeds. Therefore, their use is not recommended.

Tyre Rotation

It is recommended that you rotate tyres at every scheduled maintenance service.

Driving conditions, driving techniques, vehicle loading and weather may warrant more frequent tyre checks and rotation.



Front and rear tyres can wear differently depending on:

- Types of roads driven on.
- Driving habits.
- Tyre pressures.
- Wheel alignment and balance.

New tyres should be fitted in pairs to the front. If replacing only one tyre, pair it on the same axle with the least worn of the other three.

Buying New Tyres

Refer to the tyre placard on the vehicle or the table in this manual for tyre size and load rating.

See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *254* or *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *282*.

Using a different size or type of tyre may affect:

- Ride.
- Handling.
- Speedometer accuracy.
- Vehicle ground clearance.
- Vehicle payload capacity.
- Maximum vehicle speed.
- Tyre clearance.
- Tyre chain clearance.

Tyres with heavy treads and those made for better grip in the wet, should only be operated within the limits recommended by the manufacturer.

Tyres with a higher speed or load rating are acceptable, provided they are fitted to a suitable rim size.

⚠ Warning

Tyres with a lower speed or load rating are NOT acceptable for fitment to the vehicle.

Replacing the factory fitted wheels and tyres with non-genuine wheels and tyres may affect the Vehicle Warranty and possibly the vehicle's insurance policy.

Contact a Holden Dealer for advice on suitable tyres.

Wheel Alignment and Tyre Balance

Improper wheel alignment or balance can cause:

- Tyres to wear fast and unevenly.
- The vehicle to pull to one side.
- Vibration.

If any of these problems exists, have the vehicle checked by a dealer.

Tyre condition is checked when the vehicle is serviced by a Holden Dealer. They are able to diagnose any unusual signs of wear. If tyres are rotated, it is recommended that balance be checked at the same time.

Tyre Chains

⚠ Warning

Tyre Chains are only permitted on front tyres of size; 205/55 R16.

- Use low profile chains that add no more than 12mm thickness to the tyre tread and inner sidewall.
- Use chains that are the correct size for the tyres.
- Install the chains on the tyres of the front axle only.
- Drive slowly and follow the chain manufacturer's instructions.

(Continued)

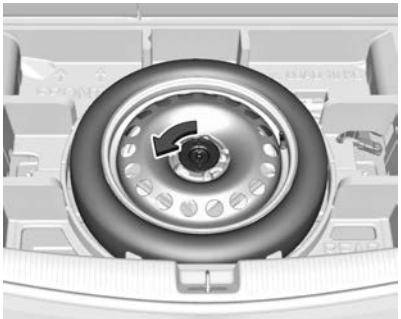
Warning (Continued)

- If the chains contact the vehicle, stop and re-tighten them. If the contact continues, slow down until it stops. Driving too fast or spinning the wheels with chains on will damage the vehicle.
- Chains must not be fitted to a compact / temporary spare tyre.
- Check the tyres are inflated to the correct pressure. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *282*

Whenever tyre chains are fitted, switch off the ESC. See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* ⇨ *181*.

Tyre Changing

The spare wheel is classified as a temporary spare wheel and corresponding speed limits apply. Seek the assistance of a dealer to check the applicable speed limit if you are unsure.



The spare wheel has a steel rim and is located in the load compartment beneath the floor cover.

To remove:

1. Open the rear compartment floor cover.
2. The spare wheel is secured with a retaining nut. Turn the nut anticlockwise and remove the spare wheel.

   The vehicle tools are located under the spare wheel. See *Tools* ⇨ *253*.
3. After a wheel change, stow the full-size wheel in the rear compartment as described below.
4. After changing the wheel back to the full size wheel, place the spare wheel back in the wheel-well and secure with the retaining nut.

⚠ Warning

Storing the jack, a wheel or other equipment in the load compartment could cause injury if they are not secured correctly. During a sudden stop or a collision, loose equipment could strike someone.

Store and secure the wheel, jack and tools always in their original storage locations.

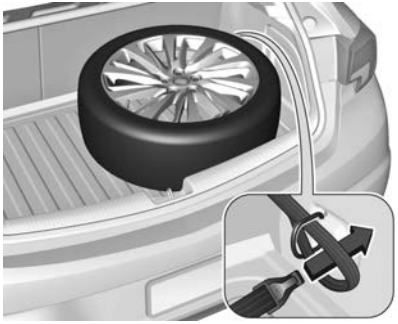
Stowing the Full Size Wheel

The spare wheel well is not designed for tyre sizes other than the spare wheel. A damaged full size wheel must be stowed in the

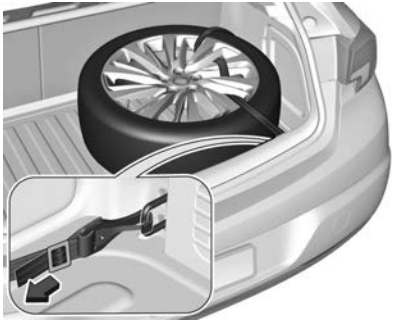
rear compartment and secured with the strap supplied with the tools. See *Tools* ⇨ *253*.

To secure the wheel:

1. Position the wheel facing upwards close to one sidewall of the rear compartment.



2. Place the loop end of the strap through the front tie down point on the appropriate side.
3. Place the hook end of the strap through the loop and pull it until the strap is fastened securely to the tie-down.



4. Insert the strap through the spokes of the wheel as shown.
5. Mount the hook to the rear tie-down point.
6. Tighten the strap and secure it using the buckle.

⚠ Danger

Always drive with the rear seat backrests folded up and engaged when stowing a full size wheel in the load compartment.

Temporary Spare Wheel

Only fit one temporary spare wheel. Do not drive faster than 80 km/h. Take curves slowly. Do not use for a long period of time.

If your vehicle gets a flat tyre on the rear while towing another vehicle, fit the temporary spare wheel in the front and the full sized tyre at the rear.

Tyre Changing

Note

Use the jack only to change wheels in case of puncture.

The jack is maintenance-free.

No people or animals may be in the vehicle when it is jacked-up.

Never crawl under a jacked-up vehicle.

Do not start the vehicle when it is raised on the jack.

Clean wheel nuts and thread with a clean cloth before mounting the wheel.

If the ground on which the vehicle is standing is soft, a solid board (max. 1 cm thick) should be placed under the jack.

Remove heavy objects from the vehicle before jacking.

⚠ Warning

All passengers must be out of the vehicle when it is being jacked.

Only jack the vehicle on hard, level surfaces.

Ensure moving parts of the jack are adequately lubricated before use.

Use the jack only at the designated lifting points. Use in other locations may result in the vehicle falling off the jack, or damage to the vehicle.

Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is supported by the jack.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

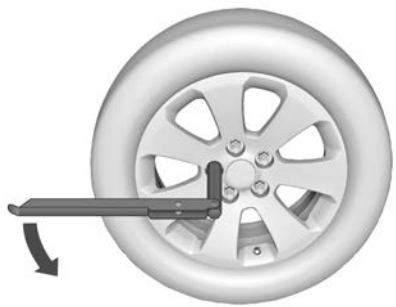
Use the jack only for lifting the vehicle when changing wheels.

Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack. No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

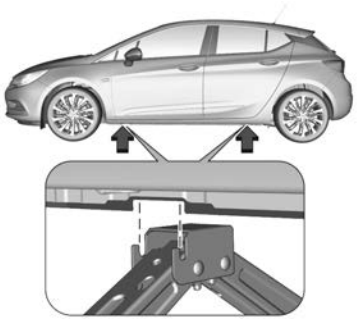
The vehicle may have a steel temporary spare wheel. Drive carefully and do not exceed 80 km/h. Although the spare tyre was fully inflated when the vehicle was new, it can lose air over time. Check the inflation pressure regularly.

After installing the spare tyre on the vehicle, stop as soon as possible to check the inflation pressure is correct. Have the flat tyre repaired or replaced and installed back on the vehicle as soon as possible.

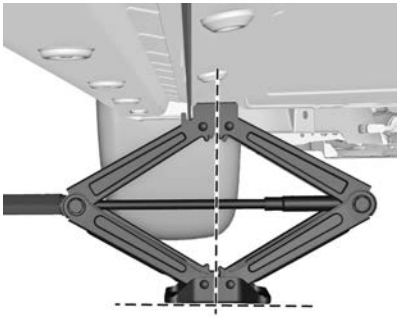
1. Park the vehicle on a level, firm and non-slip surface. The front wheels must be in the straight-ahead position.
2. Apply the parking brake and engage **P** (Park). If required, switch the hazard warning flashers on.
3. Remove the spare wheel as previously described.
4. If fitted, remove the wheel nut caps with a screwdriver. To protect the wheel, place a soft cloth between the screwdriver and the wheel.



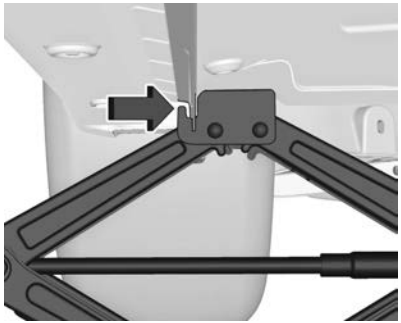
5. Fold out the wheel wrench and fit onto a wheel nut ensuring it locates securely. Loosen each wheel nut by half a turn.



6. Position the jack under the vehicle jacking point closest to the wheel being changed.



7. Set the jack to the required height and position it directly below the jacking point in a manner that prevents it from slipping.



Ensure the edge of the body fits into the notch of the jack.

8. Fit the wheel wrench onto the jack, and with the jack correctly aligned, rotate the wheel wrench until the wheel is sufficiently clear of the ground.
9. Unscrew the wheel nuts.
10. Change the wheel.
11. Fit the wheel nuts and tighten lightly.
12. Lower the vehicle.
13. Fit the wheel wrench onto a wheel nut and ensuring it is located securely, tighten each nut as tightly as possible in a crosswise sequence.

⚠ Warning

As soon as possible after changing a wheel, have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench. Wheel nuts must be tightened evenly to the correct torque, as wheel nuts which have not been tightened properly could eventually allow the wheel to

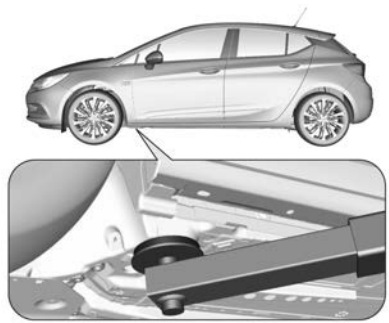
(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

come off while the vehicle is moving. See *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *281*.

14. Install the wheel nut caps, if fitted.
15. Install the vehicle jacking point covers, if equipped.
16. Stow and secure the replaced wheel as previously described and the vehicle tools.
17. Check the tyre pressure of the installed wheel as soon as possible. Have the defective tyre renewed or repaired as soon as possible.

Lifting Position for Hoist



Front arm position of the lifting arm pad centrally under the relevant vehicle jacking point.

Rear arm position of the lifting arm pad centrally under the relevant vehicle jacking point.

Jump Starting

⚠ Warning

Vehicles with an automatic transmission cannot be push or tow started. Therefore, if the battery is flat, jump start the vehicle.

Batteries produce explosive gases, contain corrosive acids and supply levels of electrical current high enough to cause burns. Therefore, adhere to the following when working near a battery:

- Do not attempt jump starting directly from the battery.
- Do not let the jumper lead clamps touch each other or other metal parts.
- Do not allow the jumper leads to contact any rotating engine components.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Do not use open flames or sparks near the battery.
- Do not smoke near the battery.
- Never use a quick charger to start the engine.
- The battery must be removed from the vehicle for recharging.
- Only use the recommended battery otherwise the vehicle systems may not work correctly. Refer to a dealer for battery replacement.
- Wear eye protection such as safety glasses and avoid leaning over the battery.
- Battery acid is corrosive. If it gets on your skin, wash with plenty of water immediately. If it gets in your eyes you should not only flush with

(Continued)

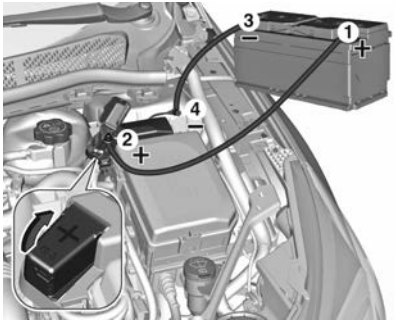
Warning (Continued)

lots of water, but should also seek medical help. Battery acid also damages paint and fabrics. To minimise damage, wash it off immediately.

- Remove rings, metal watch bands and other metal jewellery before working around the battery.

A vehicle with a discharged vehicle battery can be started using jump leads and the vehicle battery of another vehicle.

- Use jump leads with insulated terminals and a cross-section of at least 16 mm^2.
- Do not disconnect the discharged vehicle battery from the vehicle.
- Switch off all unnecessary electrical consumers such as the headlights, etc.
- The vehicles must not come into contact with each other during the jump starting process.
- Apply the parking brake, and place the automatic transmission in **P** (Park).
- Open the positive terminal protection caps of both vehicle batteries.



Lead connection order:

1. Connect the red lead to the booster battery positive terminal.
2. Connect the other end of the red lead to the positive terminal of your vehicle near the fuse box in the engine compartment.
3. Connect the black lead to the booster battery negative terminal.
4. Connect the other end of the black lead to a vehicle grounding point of your vehicle in the engine compartment.

Route the leads so they cannot catch on moving parts in the engine compartment.

To start the engine:

1. Start the engine of the vehicle providing the jump.
2. After five minutes, start the other engine.

   Start attempts should be made for no longer than 15 seconds at an interval of one minute.
3. Allow both engines to idle for approx. three minutes with the leads connected.

4. Switch on electrical consumers, e.g. headlights, heated rear window, of the vehicle receiving the jump start.
5. Reverse the above sequence exactly when removing leads.

Towing the Vehicle

To avoid causing damage, a flat-bed tow truck is the best method of towing the vehicle .

If a flat-bed tow truck is not available, use a standard tow truck in the following configuration:

- Raise the front of the vehicle with the rear wheels in contact with the road.
- Raise the rear of the vehicle and use a towing dolly to prevent the front wheels contacting the road.

Where a tow truck is not available, the vehicle can be towed as follows.

Carefully insert a screwdriver at the lower part of the cap and lever downwards to remove the cap.

Note

Take care to avoid paint damage. Wrap the screwdriver tip with tape or a cloth.

The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools. See *Tools* ⇨ *253*.

Screw in the towing eye as far as it will go until it stops in a horizontal position.

As required, attach a tow rope or similar to the towing eye.

The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering the vehicle.

Turn the ignition on to release steering wheel lock and to permit operation of brake lights, horn and windscreen wiper. Move the shift lever to neutral. Release the parking brake.

Caution
Drive slowly. Accelerate smoothly and do not jerk the tow rope.

When the engine is not running, considerably more force is needed to brake and steer.

To prevent the entry of exhaust gases from the towing vehicle, switch on the air recirculation and close the windows.

The vehicle must be towed facing forwards. If the vehicle is towed with all four wheels on the ground, the maximum speed is 80 km/h and for a maximum distance of 100 km. In all other cases and if the transmission is defective, the front wheels must be raised off the ground.

Seek the assistance of a dealer.

After towing, unscrew the towing eye. Insert cap at the top and engage downwards.

Towing Another Vehicle

Carefully insert a screwdriver at the lower part of the cap and lever downwards to remove the cap.

Note

Take care to avoid paint damage. Wrap the screwdriver tip with tape or a cloth.

The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools. See *Tools* ⇨ *253*.

Screw in the towing eye as far as it will go until it stops in a horizontal position.

The lashing eye at the rear underneath the vehicle must never be used as a towing eye.

Attach a tow rope or similar to the towing eye. The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering a vehicle.

Caution
Drive slowly. Accelerate smoothly and do not jerk the tow rope.

After towing, unscrew the towing eye. Insert the cap with the upper flange into the recess and fix the cap by pushing. Stow the towing eye with the vehicle tools.

Appearance Care

Exterior Care

Washing

The paintwork of the vehicle is exposed to environmental influences. Wash and wax regularly. When using automatic vehicle washes, select a programme that includes waxing.

Bird droppings, dead insects, resin, pollen and the like should be cleaned off immediately, as they contain aggressive constituents which can cause paint damage. Failure to do so may result in permanent damage, particularly in hot weather conditions.

Road bloom is a gradual build up of road and environmental grime. This should be removed with a paint cleaner once a year, in addition to normal washing.

If using a vehicle wash, comply with the vehicle wash manufacturer's instructions. Never use an automatic wash that requires anything

touching the paint (other than water). The wipers must be switched off. Remove antenna and external accessories such as roof racks etc.

If you wash your vehicle by hand, make sure that the insides of the wheel housings are also thoroughly rinsed out.

Clean edges and folds on opened doors and the bonnet as well as the areas they cover.

Have the door hinges of all doors lubricated by a Holden Dealer.

Caution

Do not clean the engine compartment with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

Thoroughly rinse and chamois off the vehicle. Rinse chamois frequently. Use separate chamois for painted and glass surfaces: remnants of wax on the windows will impair vision.

Do not use hard objects to remove spots of tar. Use tar removal spray on painted surfaces.

Note

For certain body colours, some variation in gloss and colour may exist in the engine bay and on the underside of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Take care when moving the vehicle after washing, in case water has affected the brakes. Applying the brakes lightly will indicate whether they have been affected. To dry them quickly, lightly apply the brakes while maintaining a slow forward speed with a clear area ahead, until brake performance returns to normal.

Exterior Lamps

Headlamp and other lamp covers are made of plastic. Do not use any abrasive, solvent based cleaners or caustic agents and do not dry-clean them.

Caution

Condensation may temporarily appear on the inside of exterior lamp lenses after rain or washing the vehicle. Condensation occurs when there is a temperature difference between the inside and outside of the lamp allowing a fine mist on the inside surface of the lamp lens. This condensation will disappear when the vehicle is in a dry environment or the lamp is on. If water does collect in the lamp contact a Holden Dealer.

Air Intakes

Clear debris from the air intakes, between the bonnet and windscreen and below the front bumper, when washing the vehicle.

Polishing and Waxing

Wax the vehicle regularly (at the latest when water no longer beads).

Polishing is necessary only if the paint has become dull or if solid deposits have become attached to it.

Paintwork polish with silicone forms a protective film, making waxing unnecessary.

Plastic body parts must not be treated with wax or polishing agents.

Windows and Windscreen Wiper Blades

Use a soft lint-free cloth or chamois leather together with window cleaner and insect remover.

- Never use abrasive cleaners to clean glass.
- Refer to a Holden Dealer for windscreen washer additive.
- Old wiper blades can cause windscreen scratching. Regularly inspect and replace them.

Caution

Do not operate the wiper blades by hand as this damages the wiper drive mechanism.

When cleaning the rear window, make sure the heating element inside is not damaged.

Clean smearing wiper blades with a soft cloth and window cleaner.

Wheels and Tyres

Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners.

- Remove oil and grease with soap and water or detergent.
- Do not use petrol to clean tyres.
- Use a good quality tyre and bumper shine if required.
- A good quality wheel cleaner can be used for cleaning alloy wheels.
- Do not use abrasive cleaners.

Door Drain Holes

- Clear drain holes at the bottom of the door panels from dirt and other foreign materials which could trap water inside the panels.
- Clean clogged drain holes with a plastic pin or peg.
- Avoid scratching the paint work.

Paintwork Damage

Rectify minor paintwork damage with a touch-up pen before rust forms.

Have more extensive damage or rust areas repaired by your Holden Dealer.

Caution

Do not spill coolant on the vehicle's exterior surfaces as it can damage the paintwork. If you do, wash it off immediately.

Underbody

Substances can cause rust under the vehicle.

- Hose the underbody with clean water whenever the vehicle is washed.
- Where the vehicle is exposed to heavy concentrations of corrosive materials, inspect and wash the complete underbody at least once each year, preferably after winter exposure.

Vehicle Graphics

Care for your vehicle graphics like you would any fine paint finish.

Wash Regularly

- Wash whenever the vehicle appears dirty. Contaminants allowed to remain on the graphic may be more difficult to remove during cleaning.
- Rinse off as much dirt and grit as possible first with a spray of water. See *'Difficult Contaminants'* below for spot cleaning of bird droppings, tar, etc.
- Use a wet, non-abrasive detergent and a soft, clean cloth or sponge.
- Rinse thoroughly with clean water. To reduce water spotting, immediately use a silicone squeegee to remove water and finish with a clean microfibre cloth.

Caution
It is not recommended to apply wax or other similar coatings on vehicle graphics.

Automated Car Washes

Touchless car washes are the best for graphic care. Use of brush car washes (depending upon the frequency and quality of brush) may cause dulling, scratching or lift the edge of the graphics.

Pressure Washing

Although hand washing is the preferred cleaning method, pressure washing may be used under these conditions:

- Ensure the water pressure is kept below 1400 kPa (2000 psi).
- Keep the water temperature below 80°C.
- Use a spray nozzle with a 40° wide angle spray pattern.
- Keep the nozzle at least 300 mm away from, and perpendicular (at 90°) to, the graphic.

Caution
Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle of less than 90° to the graphic may lift the edges of the film.

Difficult Contaminants

Soften difficult contaminants such as bug splatter, bird droppings, tree sap and similar contaminants by soaking them for several minutes

with very hot, soapy water. Rinse thoroughly and dry. If further cleaning is needed, try a product such as Bug and Tar Remover or a Citrus Base Cleaner by testing in an inconspicuous area to ensure no damage to the graphics before applying to the affected area.

Isopropyl alcohol (IPA) mixed two parts IPA to 1 part water or denatured alcohol may also help.

- Spot-clean the contaminants.
- Do not use rough scrubbing or abrasive tools which will scratch the film.
- Wash and rinse off all residue immediately.

Fuel Spills

Wipe off immediately to avoid degrading the vinyl and adhesive. Then wash, rinse and dry as described in *'Wash Regularly'* as soon as possible.

Film Restoration

The following restoration recommendations will help keep your vehicle wraps looking their best:

- Do not use any abrasive polishes or cutting compounds.
- Do not use any polishing or wax products on matte or textured films.
- If there is wax or any wax residue on the surface, remove with an all-purpose cleaner.

The following table shows some available products to help restore your vehicle graphics.

Note

Before using, always test and approve in an inconspicuous area.

Film or Finish Type	Product or Solution
Smooth Gloss Texture	3M™ Perfect-It™ Show Car Paste Wax 39526
Matte or Satin Texture	Isopropyl alcohol and water (2:1 ratio)
Matte White (1080-M10) Carbon Fibre White (1080-CF10)	Based on the type/degree of contamination, use one of more of these solutions, in the order shown, to remove any build-up: 1. Hot, soapy water solution 2. Isopropyl alcohol (IPA) and water (ratio 2:1) 3. Simple Green® All-Purpose Cleaner 4. Household chlorine bleach; followed by IPA/water. 5. Mineral spirits; followed by IPA/water
Carbon Fibre or Brushed Metal Texture	3M™ Tyre Restorer or Meguiar's Natural Shine Protectant
Carbon Fibre Black (1080-CF12)	Meguiar's Ultimate Black Plastic Restorer

Note

The products listed are examples and may not be available. Use this table as a guide if an equivalent product is required.

Caution

Do not allow the cleaning solution to soak on the surface; immediately rinse with clear water.

Store Indoors or Under Cover Whenever Possible

Just like paint, vinyl graphics are degraded by prolonged exposure to sun and atmospheric pollutants, particularly if they are applied to horizontal surfaces such as the bonnet and roof.

Whenever possible, store the vehicle in a garage, or at least in a shaded area during the day. At night protect the vehicle from dew or rain, which may contain acidic pollutants (a common problem in many large

metropolitan areas). When a garage is not available, consider using a cloth car cover at night.

If your graphics start to discolour or turn brown, immediately remove the graphics from the vehicle to avoid staining the underlying paint.

Interior Care

⚠ Warning

Many cleaning products are toxic, flammable or may damage the interior. When cleaning the interior, avoid volatile cleaners such as acetone, lacquer thinners, enamel reducers, nail polish removers, or cleaners such as laundry soaps, bleaches or reducing agents. Never use carbon tetrachloride, petrol or naphtha for any cleaning purpose. Ensure that the vehicle is well ventilated while using any cleaners and always follow the cleaning product manufacturer's

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

recommendations. Water based cleaners, rather than solvent based cleaners, are recommended.

Steam cleaning of seats is not recommended.

Interior and Upholstery

Only clean the vehicle interior, including the instrument panel fascia and panelling, with a dry cloth or interior cleaner.

The instrument panel should only be cleaned using a soft damp cloth.

Clean fabric upholstery with a vacuum cleaner and brush. Remove stains with an upholstery cleaner.

Clean seat belts with a mild, nonabrasive soap and lukewarm water.

After washing thoroughly, sponge the solution out of the belts.

Caution

Close Velcro fasteners as open Velcro fasteners on clothing could damage seat upholstery.

Plastic and Rubber Parts

Plastic and rubber parts can be cleaned with the same cleaner as used to clean the body. Use interior cleaner if necessary. Do not use any other agent. Avoid solvents and petrol in particular. Do not use high pressure jet cleaners.

Floor Mats

- Pull the mat up at each retainer to remove the mat.
- Push the mat down onto the retainers to replace.

⚠ Warning

If a floor mat is the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with the accelerator pedal and/or brake pedal. Interference with the pedals can cause unintended acceleration and/or increased stopping distance which can cause a crash and injury.

Make sure the floor mat does not interfere with the accelerator or brake pedal.

Genuine Holden Accessory floor mats are designed for your vehicle. If the floor mats need replacing, it is recommended that Holden approved floor mats be purchased.
Non-genuine floor mats may not fit properly and may interfere with the accelerator or brake pedal. Always check the floor mats do not interfere with the pedals.

- Use the floor mat with the correct side up. Do not turn it over.
- Do not place anything on top of the driver's side floor mat.
- Use only a single floor mat on the driver's side.
- Do not place one floor mat on top of another.

Service and Maintenance

General Information
Service Information 274

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 275

General Information

Service Information

In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of your vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the correct intervals as specified.

Refer to your Service & Warranty booklet for the service schedules and for more information.

Engine Oil Life System

The vehicle has a computer system that indicates when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on a combination of factors which include engine revolutions, engine temperature and kilometres driven.

Based on driving conditions, the kilometres at which an oil change is indicated can vary considerably.

For the oil life system to work correctly, the system must be reset every time the oil is changed. When the system has calculated the oil life has been diminished, it indicates that an oil change is necessary. A message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

Change the oil as soon as possible within the next 1000 km.

It is possible that if you are driving under the best conditions, the oil life system may indicate that an oil change is not necessary for a longer period than that shown in the service schedule. However, the engine oil and filter must be changed in accordance with the service schedules outlined in the Service & Warranty booklet.

A Holden dealer has trained service people who will perform this work and reset the system.

To reset the system yourself after an oil change, see *Service Display* ⇨ *73*.

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Engine Type	1.4L 4 Cyl Petrol	1.6L 4 Cyl Petrol
Engine oil	5W-30 dexos (dexos1® Gen2)	
Coolant	50% clean fresh water and 50% Dexcool® anti-freeze coolant	
Automatic transmission fluid	Dexron® VI	
Brake fluid	DOT 4 hydraulic brake fluid conforming to GMW3356	

Technical Data

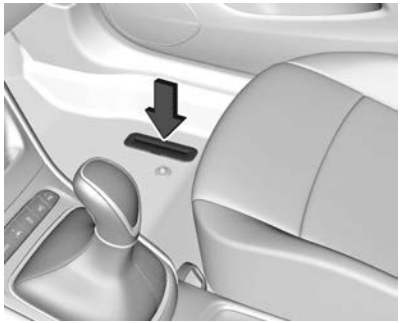
Vehicle Identification
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 276
Engine Identification 277
Identification Labels 277

Vehicle Data
Engine Data 279
Vehicle Weight 279
Vehicle Dimensions 281
Capacities and Specifications 281
Tyre Pressure 282

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is visible through the windscreen.

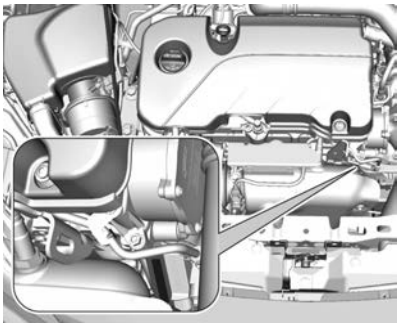


The VIN is also stamped on the floor panel on the driver's side; visible under the cover in the floor carpet.

It is also included on the vehicle compliance label.

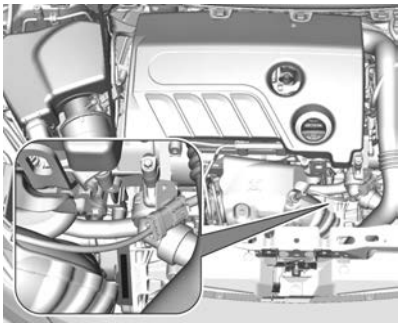
Engine Identification

1.4L Petrol Engine



The engine serial number is located on the vehicle front side of the engine block.

1.6L Petrol Engine

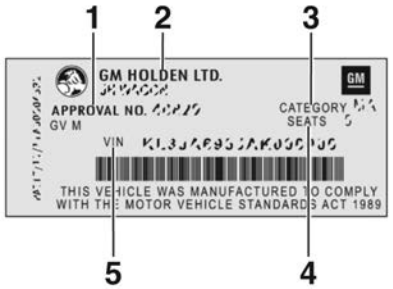


The engine serial number is located on the vehicle front side of the engine block.

Identification Labels

Compliance Label

The vehicle compliance label is located on the front left door frame.



Example only

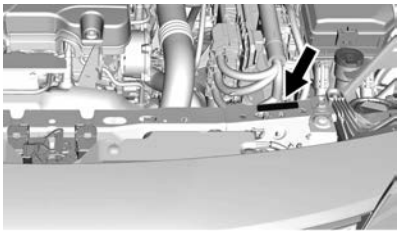
Information on the compliance label:

1. Approval number.
2. Manufacturer and vehicle model.
3. Category.
4. Number of seats.
5. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).

Identification Label

An identification label is located on the front left door frame.

Built Date Label



The build date label is located on the front panel in the engine compartment.

Vehicle Data

Engine Data

Engine type	1.4L 4 Cyl Petrol	1.6L 4 Cyl Petrol
Engine	1399 cc	1598 cc
Engine power and torque	Refer to holden.com.au	
Fuel type	Petrol	
Octane rating (RON)*		
Recommended:	Unleaded 91	Premium unleaded 95
Possible:	Premium unleaded 95 or 98	Premium unleaded 98
Ethanol compatibility	E10	

*: For further information see *Recommended Fuel* ⇨ *218*.

Vehicle Weight

Overloading is a safety hazard and could also shorten the life of the vehicle.

Maximum Vehicle Carrying Capacity

Engine	Variant	Occupants (Average 68 kg each)	Luggage and Accessories (kg)	Total Load (kg)
1.4L 4 Cyl Petrol	All	5	68	408
1.6L 4 Cyl Petrol	All	5	68	408

Note

- The carrying capacity assumes that no accessories are fitted. If accessories are fitted, the carrying capacity must be decreased accordingly.
- Axle limits must not be exceeded. See “Axle Loads” later in this section.

Axle Loads

Maximum Front and Rear Axle Loads

Do not exceed the maximum axle loads, including the weight of any options or accessories fitted to the vehicle. Take the roof rack load into account when determining the rear axle load. Weigh at a weighbridge if unsure.

Engine	Front Axle Load (kg)	Rear Axle Load (kg)
1.4L 4 Cyl Petrol	950	910
1.6L 4 Cyl Petrol	1000	910

Vehicle Dimensions

Variant	Length	Width Incl. Mirrors	Height	Wheelbase	Track: Front	Track: Rear
Hatchback	4386	2042	1485	2662	1530–1548	1537–1565

The above figures are based on design dimensions.

Capacities and Specifications

Engine	1.4L 4 Cyl Petrol	1.6L 4 Cyl Petrol
Engine Oil (Refill incl. filter)	4.0 L	5.5 L
Coolant	5.1 L	6.3 L
Fuel Tank	48.0 L	
Wheel Nut Torque	140 Nm	

All capacities are approximate

Tyre Pressure

1.4L 4 Cylinder Engine

Tyre Size	Wheel Size and Profile	Recommended Pressure (kPa/PSI)						
		Front			Rear			Spare
		Comfort	ECO	Full	Comfort	ECO	Full	—
225/45 R17 SL 91V	17 x 7.5J	220/32	270/39	250/36	220/32	270/39	270/39	—
T115/70 R16 SL 92M	16 x 4.0	—	—	—	—	—	—	420/60

1.6L 4 Cylinder Engine

Tyre Size	Wheel Size and Profile	Recommended Pressure (kPa/PSI)						
		Front			Rear			Spare
		Comfort	ECO	Full	Comfort	ECO	Full	—
225/45 R17 SL 91V	17 x 7.5J	240/35	270/39	250/36	220/32	270/39	270/39	—
225/40 R18 XL 92W	18 x 7.5J	260/38	270/39	270/39	240/35	270/39	290/42	—
T115/70 R16 SL 92M	16 x 4.0	—	—	—	—	—	—	420/60

Customer Information

Customer Information
Trademarks and Licence Agreements 283
Owner Assistance 284

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy
Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 285
Cybersecurity 286
Event Data Recorders 286

Customer Information

Trademarks and Licence Agreements

Dexos, Dexron, DexCool

Dexos®, Dexron®, and Dexcool® and their associated logos are registered trademarks of General Motors LLC.

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logo are registered trademarks and are owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Made for iPod iPhone

"Made for iPod," and "Made for iPhone," mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod or iPhone may affect wireless performance.

iPhone®, iPod®, iPod nano®, iPod touch®, iPad® and Siri® are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.

Android

Android™ and GooglePlay™ are trademarks of Google Inc.

Owner Assistance

Holden Customer Care

At Holden, we want you to be completely satisfied with your ownership experience. This applies to your vehicle and any Holden representative you may deal with.

Refer below for two options for seeking assistance with your query.

Holden Dealerships

Holden encourages you to seek assistance from your Holden Dealership. Each Holden Dealership is equipped to manage any sales, servicing, parts or technical query.

In the instance that you wish to escalate a query to a higher level of staff, further options are available to you.

As a first step, Holden suggests you discuss any concern with the relevant Department Manager (Sales Manager or Service Manager).

Alternatively, the Dealership General Manager or Dealer Principal will also be happy to assist you.

Holden Customer Care Office

Should you wish to speak to a Holden representative, you are welcome to contact the Holden Customer Care team.

Refer below for operating hours and various methods of communication.

Operating Hours

Weekdays: 8am – 7pm AEST (except Victorian public holidays)

Telephone

Holden Customer Care can be telephoned from anywhere within Australia for only the cost of a local call.

The contact number is:

1800 033 349

Email

Alternatively, you may prefer to email Holden at:

holdencustomercare@gm.com

Written Correspondence

You can also write to Holden at the address below:

The Manager
Holden Customer Care Centre
GPO Box 1714
Melbourne 3001

Your written correspondence should clearly outline your concern or query and include:

- Your name and address
- Telephone numbers, both private and business
- Servicing dealer's name and address
- Vehicle model
- Vehicle identification number (I.S.O. VIN), refer to the inside front cover of the Service/ Warranty Booklet in your vehicle's glove box
- Date of purchase
- Current odometer reading

Most of this information will be found on the Vehicle Identification Certificate, located inside the front cover of the Service & Warranty Booklet in your vehicle's glove box.

Before you write however, remember that the telephone is the quicker and more efficient means of communication.

New Zealand

The information in this Owner's Manual applies primarily to Australian Holden vehicles and there may be some differences to the Warranty and Owner Assistance provisions for New Zealand.

Applicable details for New Zealand are set out in the Holden Warranty and Owner Assistance Information booklet enclosed in the New Zealand glovebox wallet.

New Zealand Assistance can be reached on:

0800 HOLDEN (0800 465 336)

This number provides access to New Zealand Roadside Assistance as well as New Zealand Customer Care.

Alternatively, you may prefer to email Holden at:

holdencustomercare@gm.com

You can also write to Holden at the address below:

The Manager
Holden Customer Care Centre
PO Box 11195
Ellerslie
Auckland 1542

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

The vehicle has a number of computers that record information about the vehicle's performance and how it is driven or used. For example, the vehicle uses computer modules to monitor and control engine and transmission performance, to monitor the conditions for airbag deployment and deploy them in a crash, and, if equipped, to provide antilock braking to help the driver control the vehicle. These modules may store data to help the dealer technician service the vehicle or to help GM improve safety or features. Some modules may also store data about how the vehicle is operated, such as rate of fuel consumption or average speed. These modules may retain personal preferences, such as radio presets, seat positions, and temperature settings.

Cybersecurity

GM collects information about the use of your vehicle including operational and safety related information. We collect this information to provide, evaluate, improve, and troubleshoot our products and services and to develop new products and services. The protection of vehicle electronics systems and customer data from unauthorised external electronic access or control is important to GM. GM maintains appropriate security standards, practices, guidelines and controls aimed at defending the vehicle and the vehicle service ecosystem against unauthorised electronic access, detecting possible malicious activity in related networks, and responding to suspected cybersecurity incidents in a timely, coordinated and effective manner. Security incidents could impact your safety or compromise your private data. To minimise security risks, please do not connect your vehicle electronic systems to unauthorised devices or connect your vehicle to any unknown or untrusted networks (such as Bluetooth, WIFI or similar technology). In the event that you suspect any security incident impacting your data or the safe operation of your vehicle, please stop operating your vehicle and contact your dealer.

Event Data Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seat belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was pressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was travelling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note

EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

GM will not access these data or share it with others except: with the consent of the vehicle owner or, if the vehicle is leased, with the consent of the lessee; in response to an official request by police or similar government office; as part of GM's defence of litigation through the discovery process; or, as required by law. Data that GM collects or receives may also be used for GM research needs or may be made available to others for research purposes, where a need is shown and the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner.

Index

A

Accessories and Modifications 226
Accessory Power 167
Adaptive Cruise Control 198
Add-On Electrical Equipment ... 224
Adjustable Air Vents 158
Adjustments
  Seat, Initial Drive 31
Advanced Parking Assist 190
Agreements
  Trademarks and License 142
Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine 235
Air Conditioning 150, 152
Air Conditioning Regular Operation 159
Air Intake 159
Airbag System
  Check 43
  What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates? 43
Airbags
  Curtain 42
  Front 40
  Readiness Light 75
  Side 41
  System Check 39
Alarm System
  Anti-theft 20
Alert
  Side Blind Zone (SBZA) 214
AM-FM-DAB Radio 105
Anchor Fittings
  Top Tether 48
Antenna
  Multi-band 108
Anti-theft
  Alarm System 20
Antilock Brake System (ABS) ... 176
  Warning Light 77
Appearance Care
  Exterior 266
  Interior 272
Apple CarPlay and Android Auto 136
Armrest
  Front Seat 33
Armrest Storage 52
Audio
  Bluetooth 113
Automatic
  Engine Start/Stop Feature 168
  Headlamp System 91
  Transmission 172

Automatic Transmission
Electronic Driving Programs ... 174
Fault ... 175
Interruption of Power Supply ... 175
Manual Mode ... 174
Shift Lever ... 172
Transmission Display ... 172
Auxiliary Jack ... 112
Avoiding Untrusted Media Devices ... 109

B

Battery ... 238
Jump Starting ... 262
Power Protection ... 97
Voltage and Charging Messages ... 86
Blade Replacement, Wiper ... 240
Bluetooth
Overview ... 130
Bluetooth Audio ... 113
Bonnet ... 228
Boot
Cover ... 52
Brake
Parking, Electric ... 177
Brake (cont'd)
System Warning Light ... 76
Brakes ... 176, 238
Antilock ... 176
Assist ... 179
Fluid ... 238
Parking ... 177
Break-In, New Vehicle ... 163
Bulb Replacement
Headlamps ... 241
Licence Plate Lamps ... 245
Side Turn Signal Lights ... 245
Taillamps ... 241
Buying New Tyres ... 256
Buzzers, Warning ... 86

C

Camera
Rear Vision (RVC) ... 183
Capacities and Specifications ... 281
Carbon Monoxide
Engine Exhaust ... 171
Tailgate ... 19
Cargo
Tie-Downs ... 53
Catalytic Converter ... 171
Caution, Danger, and Warning ... 3
Centre Console Lighting ... 96
Chains, Tyre ... 256
Charging
Wireless ... 64
Charging System Light ... 75
Check
Engine Light (Malfunction Indicator) ... 75
Child Restraint Installation Locations ... 48
Child Restraints
Infants and Young Children ... 45
Installation Locations ... 48
ISOFIX ... 49
Older Children ... 44
Systems ... 46
Cleaning
Exterior Care ... 266
Interior Care ... 272
Climate Control Systems ... 150
Air Conditioning ... 150
Electronic ... 152
Heating ... 150
Clock ... 63
Cluster, Instrument ... 66
Compartments
Storage ... 50

Control System
Emission 227
Controls
Steering Wheel 100
Convex Mirrors 22
Coolant
Engine 235
Engine Temperature Gauge 72
Engine Temperature Warning Light 78
Cooling 150, 152
Cover
Rear Floor Storage 52
Coverage Explanations 124
Covers 94
Boot 52
Misted Lamps 94
Cruise Control 194
Adaptive 198
Light 79
Cupholders 50
Curtain Airbag System 42
Customer-installed Equipment, Notices 43
Cybersecurity 286

D

Danger, Warning, and Caution 3
Data Recorders, Event 286
Database Coverage Explanations 124
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 91
Destination 118
Dimensions
Vehicle 281
Displays
Automatic Transmission 172
Service 73
Door
Ajar Light 79
Locks 14
Driver Assistance Systems 183
Driver Information Centre (DIC) 80
Driving
Electronic Programs 174
Environment 162

E

Electric Parking Brake 177
Electric Parking Brake Light 76
Electrical Equipment, Add-On 224
Electrical System
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 247
Fuses 246
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 250
Rear Fuse Panel 251
Electronic Climate Control System 152
Electronic Driving Programs 174
Electronic Stability Control 181
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light 78
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator Warning Light 78
Emission Control System 227
Emission Information 226
Engine
Air Cleaner/Filter 235
Automatic Start/Stop Feature 168
Check Light (Malfunction Indicator) 75
Compartment Overview 230
Coolant 235
Coolant Temperature Gauge 72

Engine (cont'd)
Coolant Temperature Warning Light 78
Exhaust 171
Oil Pressure Light 78
Overheating 236
Starting 166
Engine Data 279
Engine Identification 277
Entry Lighting 96
Event Data Recorders 286
Exit Lighting 97
Exterior Lamp Controls 90

F
Fault, Automatic Transmission 175
Filter, Engine Air Cleaner 235
Fixed Air Vents 159
Flashers, Hazard Warning 92
Flat Tyre Changing 257
Floor Mats 272
Fluid
Brakes 238
Washer 238
Fog Lamps
Rear 93
Fog Light, Rear 79
Folding Mirrors 22
Following Distance Indication System 209
Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System 205
Front Airbag System 40
Front Seat Armrest 33
Front Seat Position Seats Adjustment 31
Front Seats
Adjustment 32
Heated 33
Front Storage 51
Fuel 218
Filling the Tank 219
Gauge 72
Low Fuel Warning Light 79
Recommended 218
Fuses 246
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 247
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 250
Rear Fuse Panel 251

G
Gauges
Engine Coolant Temperature ...72
Fuel 72
Odometer 71
Service Display 73
Speedometer 70
Tachometer 72
Trip Odometer 71
Turn Signal 74
Gear Shifting Light 77
General Information
Vehicle Care 226
Global Positioning System (GPS) 123
Glove Box 50
Guidance
Problems with the Route 124

H
Hazard Warning Flashers 92
Head Restraints 29
Headlamp Leveling Control 92
Headlamps
Automatic 91
Bulb Replacement 241
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 91

Headlamps (cont'd)
High-Beam On Light 79
High/Low Beam Changer 91
Lamps On Reminder 79
Heated
Rear Window 26
Steering Wheel 59
Heated Front Seats 33
Heated Mirrors 23
Heating 150, 152
High-Beam On Light 79
Hill Start Assist (HSA) 179
Horn 59
How to Wear Seat Belts Properly 36
HVAC 150, 152

I

Identification Labels 277
If the System Needs Service 124
Ignition Positions 163
Immobiliser 21
Light 79
Indicator
Vehicle Ahead 77
Infants and Young Children, Restraints 45
Information
Service 274
Information on Loading the Vehicle 55
Instrument Cluster 66
Instrument Panel Overview 4
Interior Lamps 95
Interruption of Power Supply 175
Introduction 2
ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems 49

J

Jack
Auxiliary 112
Jump Starting 262

K

Keyless Entry
Remote (RKE) System 9
Keys 7

L

Lamps
Daytime Running (DRL) 91
Exterior Controls 90
Interior 95
Licence Plate 245
Lamps (cont'd)
Malfunction Indicator (Check Engine) 75
Misted Covers 94
On Reminder 79
Reading 95
Rear Fog 93
Reversing 94
Side Turn Signal 245
Sun Visor 96
Taillamps 241
Lane Keep Assist (LKA) 216
Lane Keep Assist Light 77
Leveling Control
Headlamp 92
Lighting
Centre Console 96
Entry 96
Exit 97
Illumination Control 94
Lights
Airbag Readiness 75
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning 77
Brake System Warning 76
Charging System 75
Check Engine (Malfunction Indicator) 75

Lights (cont'd)
Cruise Control 79
Door Ajar 79
Electric Parking Brake 76
Electronic Stability Control (ESC), Off 78
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator Warning 78
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning 78
Engine Oil Pressure 78
Fog Lamp, Rear 79
Gear Shifting 77
High-Beam On 79
High/Low Beam Changer 91
Immobiliser 79
Lane Keep Assist 77
Low Fuel Warning 79
Seat Belt Reminders 74
Service Electric Parking Brake 76
Traction Control System (TCS) 78
Loading the Vehicle 55
Locks
Door 14
Locks (cont'd)
Safety 18
Low Fuel Warning Light 79

M

Maintenance
Air Conditioning Regular Operation 159
Maintenance Schedule
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 275
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 75
Manual Mode 174
Map Data Updates 124
Maps 116
Media
Avoiding Untrusted Devices .. 109
Messages
Battery Voltage and Charging 86
Vehicle 85
Mirrors
Automatic Dimming Rearview 24
Convex 22
Folding 22
Heated 23
Manual Rearview 23
Mirrors (cont'd)
Power 22
Misted Light Covers 94
Mode
Sport 182
Multi-band Antenna 108

N

Navigation
Destination 118
Using the System 115
Navigation Symbols 117
New Vehicle Break-In 163
Notices for Customer-installed Equipment 43

O

Odometer 71
Trip 71
Oil
Engine 233
Pressure Light 78
Older Children, Restraints 44
Other Service Items
Air Conditioning System 150
Outlets
Power 63
Outside Temperature 63
Overheating, Engine 236

Overrun Cut-Off 168
Overview 98
Instrument Panel 4
Owner Assistance 284

P

Parking 170
Brake 177
Parking Assist 186
Advanced 190
Personalisation
Vehicle 87
Phone
Apple CarPlay and Android Auto 136
Bluetooth 130
Port
USB 109
Positioning
Vehicle 123
Power
Mirrors 22
Outlets 63
Protection, Battery 97
Retained Accessory (RAP) ... 167
Windows 24
Pregnancy, Using Seat Belts 39
Pressure
Tyre 282
Privacy
Vehicle Data Recording 285
Problems with Route Guidance 124

R

Radio Data System (RDS) 107
Radio Reception 108
Radios
AM-FM-DAB Radio 105
Reading Lamps 95
Rear Floor Storage Cover 52
Rear Fog Light 79
Rear Fog Lights 93
Rear Seats 34
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) 183
Rear Window Washer/Wiper 62
Rear Windows
Heated 26
Rearview Mirrors 23
Automatic Dimming 24
Recognition
Voice 125
Recommended
Fuel 218
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 275
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 8, 9
Remote Vehicle Start 13
Replacement Parts
Airbags 44
Replacing Airbag System 44
Replacing Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash 39
Restraints
Where to Put 47
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) 167
Reverse Lamps 94
Ride Control Systems 181
Electronic Stability (ESC) 181
Roof
Sunroof 27
Roof Rack System 54
Rotation, Tyres 255

S

Safety Locks 18
Seat Belts
Care 39
Child Restraints 48

Seat Belts (cont'd)
How to Wear Seat Belts Properly 36
Reminders 74
Replacing after a Crash 39
Three-Point 38
Use During Pregnancy 39
Seats
Adjustment, Front 32
Head Restraints 29
Heated Front 33
Position, Front 31
Rear 34
Service 160
Accessories and Modifications 226
Climate Control System 150
Service and Maintenance Service Information 274
Service Display 73
Service Electric Parking Brake Light 76
Service Information 274
Servicing System 124
Settings 137
Shift Lever 172
Side Airbag System 41
Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) ...214
Side Turn Signal Lights 245
Signals, Turn and Lane-Change 93
Software Updates 105
Specifications and Capacities 281
Speed Limiter 196
Speedometer 70
Sport Mode 182
Start Assist, Hill 179
Start Vehicle, Remote 13
Starting and Operating Overrun Cut-Off 168
Starting the Engine 166
Steering
Heated Wheel 59
Wheel Adjustment 58
Wheel Controls 58
Steering Wheel Controls 100
Storage
Boot Cover 52
Vehicle 226
Storage Areas
Armrest 52
Front 51
Glove Box 50
Information on Loading the Vehicle 55
Storage Areas (cont'd)
Rear Floor Storage Cover 52
Roof Rack System 54
Storage Compartments 50
Sun Visor Lamps 96
Sun Visors 26
Sunroof 27
Symbols 3
Navigation 117
System
Following Distance Indication 209
Forward Collision Alert (FCA) 205
Global Positioning 123
Roof Rack 54
Systems
Driver Assistance 183

T

Tachometer 72
Tailgate 19
Taillamps 241
Technical Data
Tyre Pressure 282
Temperature
Outside 63

Theft-Deterrent Systems
Immobiliser 21
Thermometer
Outside Temperature 63
Three-Point Seat Belt 38
Time 63
Tools 253
Top Tether Anchor Fittings 48
Towing
Another Vehicle 265
Trailer 220
Trailer Sway Control (TSC) ... 223
Vehicle 264
Traction
Control System (TCS) 180
Traction Control System
(TCS) Off Light 78
Trademarks and
License Agreements 142, 283
Trailer
Sway Control (TSC) 223
Towing 220
Transmission
Automatic 172
Transmission Display 172
Tread Depth 255
Trip Odometer 71
Turn and Lane-Change
Signals 93
Turn Signal 74
Tyre Pressure 282
Tyres 254
Buying New Tyres 256
Chains 256
Changing 257
Pressure 254
Rotation 255
Wheel Alignment and Tyre
Balance 256

U

Updates
Map Data 124
Software 105
USB Port 109
Using the Navigation System ... 115
Using the System 102
Using This Manual 3

V

Vehicle
Identification Number (VIN) ... 276
Messages 85
Personalisation 87
Remote Start 13
Towing 264
Vehicle (cont'd)
Towing Another Vehicle 265
Vehicle Ahead Indicator 77
Vehicle Care
Tyre Pressure 254
Vehicle Data Recording and
Privacy 285
Vehicle Dimensions 281
Vehicle Identification
Labels 277
Vehicle Positioning 123
Vehicle Storage 226
Vehicle Weight 279
Ventilation
Adjustable Air 158
Fixed Air Vents 159
Visors 26
Voice Recognition 125

W

Warning
Brake System Light 76
Caution and Danger 3
Warning Chimes 86
Warnings
Hazard Flashers 92
Washer Fluid 238

Weights
Vehicle 279
Wheels
Alignment and Tyre
Balance 256
Where to Put the Restraint 47
Windows 24
Heated, Rear 26
Power 24
Windshield
Wiper/Washer 60
Wiper Blade Replacement 240
Wipers
Rear Washer 62
Wireless Charging 64